Unit 10 Travelling for work — Lessons 1 & 2

scenery	منظر طبيعي	Train journey		رحلة بالقطار	
destination	وجهة الوصول	event	حدث	Great way	طريقة عظيمة
carriage	عربة	First class	درجة اولي	Book online	يحجز عبر النت
asssistant	مساعد	neighbour	جار	predict	يتنبأ
natural	طبيعي	final	نهائي	promise	يوعد - وعد
Midday bus		اتوبيس منتصف النهار		opinion	رأي
Sleeper train	قطار مجهز للنوم	Economy class		درجة اقتصادية	
return ticket		تذكرة ذهاب وعودة		arrange	يرتب
decision	قرار	prediction	تنبؤ	based on	مبني علي
Single tickets		تذاكر ذهاب فقط		booking	حجز

Definitions

destination	وجهة الوصول	the place you are travelling to
meeting	اجتماع	an event when people meet to discuss something
scenery	منظر طبيعي	mountains, rivers or other natural things that you can see
Booking	الحجز	arranging for something you want later
return tickets	تذكرة ذهاب وعودة	tickets for a journey to a place and back again
carriage	عربة	part of a train

Confusing words

An hour	ساعة زمن	**A watch**	ساعة يد
Scenery	منظر طبيعي	**Scene**	مشهد – مكان الحادث
Turn	يستدير	**Return**	يعود
Fun	مرح – متعة	**Funny**	مضحك
On the way	في الطريق	**In the way**	عقبة في الطريق

Opposites

Busy	مزدحم	**empty**	فارغ
online	متصل بالنت	**offline**	غير متصل النت
The same	نفس الشئ	**different**	مختلف

Prepositions

At the front of	في مقدمة	Arrange for	يرتب ل
On holiday	في اجازة	On time	في الوقت المحدد
Prepare for	يجهز ل	On a sleeper train	في قطار النوم

Expressions

do a journey	يقوم برحلة	It's fun going to	من الممتع ان نذهب الي
back again	يعود مرة اخرى	book online	يحجز عبر النت
have the same opinion	لديه نفس الرأى	have a meeting	لديه اجتماع
A good night's sleep	ليلة نوم هادئة	put down the beds	يفرد السرير لاسفل
make (a decision – promise- prediction)		do a test	يؤدى اختبار

Language Notes

Meeting اجتماع

* I have a meeting with the manager.

Interview مقابلة شخصية

* Mohamed Salah gave an interview to Eurosport.

Single اعزب – تذكرة ذهاب فقط

My brother is single.

I booked a single ticket to Aswan. I'll stay there.

Return تذكرة ذهاب و عودة

He booked a return ticket , he will come back tonight.

Arrive at يصل الي مكان صغير

We arrive at school on time.

Arrive in يصل الي مكان كبير

They arrived in Aswan yesterday.

Get to يصل الي

How can I get to the bank?

Reach يصل الي (بدون حرف جر)

Ali reached the station safely.

by في حالة عدم وجود فاصل **- in - on**

- by car - by train - by plane - by boat - by ship - by bus - by bike. on foot

(car - taxi) in

in a / the / my car - in a / the / my taxi - in Ali 's car
on the bus - on the train - on a bike - on my horse - on Ahmed's bike .

Reading

SB 1

My train journey

Hi Ali,

At the moment, I'm at Cairo station with my father. We're taking the sleeper train to Aswan tonight. He has a **meeting** there tomorrow and he has asked me to go with him. The train leaves at seven o'clock. There are a lot of other people who are waiting too, so the train is going to be busy.Travelling by train is a great way to see the **scenery** of a country. I've done this journey before. The beds are very comfortable. I know that we're going to arrive at our **destination** after a good night's sleep. **Booking** tickets is easy: you can book online or buy tickets at a station. My father bought us **return tickets** from Cairo to Aswan. The journey takes about 13 hours.We're eating in the restaurant **carriage** this evening. After dinner, the assistant on the train puts down the beds in the sleeping car. It's fun going to sleep and knowing that we're going to wake up in a different place the next day!
The train stops at Luxor early tomorrow morning on its way to Aswan.
I think it will be hot in Aswan. I'll call you when I arrive at the hotel.

Best wishes,

Tarek

Classwork

- **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1- We love to watch the beautiful …………………… from the train's window.

a. journey b. mystery c. discovery d. scenery

2- My family and I are taking the …………………… train to Alexandria tomorrow.

a. asleep b. sleeper c. sleepy d. sleeping

3- Excuse me, is Alexandria the final …………………… of this train?

a. carriage b. ticket c. destination d. class

4- The people who work at the shop have a …………………… every day before the shop opens.

a. break b. meeting c. lesson d. party

5- Can I …………………… a ticket, to Alexandria, please?

a. book b. Look c. cook d. walk

6- The assistant told us that our ……………………was at the front of the train.

a. bus b. taxi c. carriage d. plane

7-The train stops at Luxor …………………… its way to Aswan.

a. with b. on c. over d. above

8- It's …………………… going to Sohag by train,

a. funny b. busy c. fun d. sleeper

9-How much did you…………………… when you went to the museum yesterday?

a. spend b. arrive c. book d. buy

10- You book…………………… class if you want to save money.

a. economy b. first c. expensive d. high

11- We can't take that train! Its .... is Alexandria and we're going to Aswan.

a. journey b. trip c. destination d. flight

12- My father has a very important .... at work today.

a minute b. meeting c. booking d. leaving

13- Booking tickets is easy; you con book .... or buy tickets at a station.

a. line b. funny c. online d. offline

14. Children..................... lots of money on sweets.

a) send b. take c.give d. spend

15. The Journey from Cairo to Aswan..................... about thirteen hours.

a) spends b. takes c. sends d. does

16. The assistant puts..................... the beds to sleep in the sleeping car.

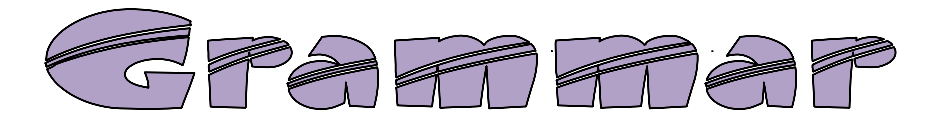
a. in b. on c. up d. down

17. Sherif arrived..................... Aswan late.

a. in b. on c. at d. to

18. Modern trains have a..................... carriage for having meals.

a. booking b. reading c. sleeper d. restaurant



Future forms: the present simple and the present continuous

التعبير عن صيغ المستقبل

1- Will (won't)+ المصدر

• We use **will** to **predict** the **future** or to make **quick decisions** and **promises**:

تستخدم **will** للتعبير عن (التنبؤ بدون دليل) و تأتى فى الغالب مع **think / expect / predict**

I think it will rain tomorrow. I think it will be hot in Aswan.

تستخدم **will** لاعطاء وعود

I'll call you when I arrive at the hotel.

تستخدم **will** للقرارات السريعة

It is cold. I will close the window.

استخدامات اخرى (الحقائق المستقبلية – العرض – الطلب – التهديد – الحالة الشرطية الاولى)

I will be 16 next year. I will give you a present. Will you open the door? I will call the police. If you study hard , you will pass the exam.

Rewrite تدريب

1- My uncle **promises to** buy me a new bike next week. (will)

- My uncte **will** buy me a new bike next week.

2- I **have just decided to** send an email to Ali (will)

I **will** send on email to Ali

3- **I expect** Leila **to** come first in the competition. (will)

Leila **will** come first in the competition.

2- (am-is-are + going to)+ المصدر

• We use am / is / are + going to + infnitive to make a **prediction** based on **present reality**:

تستخدم للتعبير عن (التنبؤ القائم على دليل) (المهارات الشخصية و الصفات ليست دليل)

There are a lot of **clouds** in the **sky**. **It's going to** rain.

He is **intelligent**. He will answer the questions easily.

تستخدم للتعبير عن (النية المسبقة و الخطط المستقبلية) و تأتى مع

intend – intention- plan to

We are going to travel by car. We have intended. I'm going to play football tomorrow.

Rewrite تدريب

1 - She intends to buy a car next week. (going to)

- She is going to buy a car next week.

2-Ayman **has decided to** buy a car. (going to)

- Ayman **is going to** buy a car.

3- I **have planned to** spend my holiday in Alexandria. (going to)

-I **am going to** spend my holiday in Alexandria.

4- **My intention is to** visit the Pyramids. (going to)

-I **am going to** visit the Pyramids.

Do you **intend to** go to the club. (Are)

-**Are** you **going to** go to the club?

3- present simple المضارع البسيط

• **We can use the present simple to talk or ask about future events which are on a timetable:**

يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن المستقبل مع جداول مواعيد محددة (المواصلات – السينما – البرامج – مباريات) و ياتى عادة مع

arrive-take off- leave- begin- end- finish- land

The train leaves at 9 p.m. What time does your bus arrive on Saturday?

We leave Damietta at 9 and arrive at Mansura at 10.

The train stops at Luxor early tomorrow morning.

4- present continuous(am-is-are + v+ing المضارع المستمر

• We can also use the present continuous to talk about things that we have already arranged to do in the future:

يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن ما تم الترتيب له مسبقا (حجز تذاكر – ترتيب اقامة حفل) و عادة تكون من الشخص نفسه و يأتي عادة مع الكلمات الاتية

arranged- prepared

I' m doing a test next Monday. Our class is visiting a museum tomorrow
We' re taking the sleeper train to Aswan tonight.

Rewrite تدريب

-They arranged to travel tomorrow. (travelling)
-They are travelling tomorrow.

Classwork

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The school day .... at 7:00 a-m.
a. is starting b will start c. is going to start d. starts
2-It's getting doudy. It.....................
a. will rain b. is going to rain c is raining d. rains
3. The library .... at four o'dock. please hurry.
a. closes b will close c. is closing d. is going to close
4. I'm hungry. I think I .... a sandwich.
a. buy b. am buying c. am going to buy d. will buy
5. I expect it..................... hot tomorrow.
a. is b. is being c. is going to be d. will be
6. We .... our dinner at the restaurant. We have booked the tables,
a. will have b. going to have c are having d. would have
7. I must go now. I promised him I..................... late.
a. wouldn't be b won't be c might d. will be
8.The bus to Aswan..................... at ten past six this evening.
a. will leave b. is leaving c. leaves d. is going to leave
9- I think it..................... be hot in Aswan.
a. will b. is going to c. is d. was
10. Look out! You.....................
a. crash b. will crash c. are crashing d. are going to crash
11- He..................... Fayoum tomorrow. He has bought the ticket.
a. visit b. is visiting c. is going to visiting d. visited
12- I intend to study French. I .... French.
a. am studying b. going to study c. will study d. am going to study
13- We .... the sleeper train to Aswan tonight.
a. are taking b. take c. takes d. taking
14- The train .... at seven o'clock.
a. is Leaving b. is going to leave c. Leaving d. Leaves

2. Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. He's intended to become a scientist, (is going)
2. Ali arranged to spend the weekend in the village, (spending)
3. Karim has planned to travel next year. (is going)
4. Mr Said promises to give me a present if I get high marks, (will)

Homework

1- Finish the following dialogue:

A tourist asks Salma about the way to the train station.

Tourist : Excuse me, could you tell me the way to the train station ?
Salma : Of course. (1) ……………………………………………………………………………………… .
Tourist : (2) ……… ?
Salma : No, it's not for away.
Tourist : (3) ………?
Salma :Ten minutes. (4) ………………………………………………………………………………………
Tourist : Thank you. It's very nice of you to walk with me.

2-Read the following, then answer the questions:

The railway has been one of the most important means of transport.This system provides cheap transport for both people and goods. Before trains were invented, people used to ride horses for journeys across a country. During those days, the roods were **poor** and journeys which now take only a few hours, could take several days or even weeks. Moreover,trains could carry heavier things compared to horses. There ore many kinds of trains. The stopping train stops at every station so it is slow. If you want the fastest journey, take the express train. You can sleep in the sleeper train as there are comfortable beds. Some people make rail cards to save their money. Trains are the cheapest and most comfortable means of transport.

A- Answer the following questions:

1- What did people use to ride before trains?
2- How are trains much better than horses?
3- Why do you think trains are safe to travel on?

B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- What do you think the underlined word "**poor**" in the passage means?
a. cheap **b. not rich** **c. bad** **d. nice**

5- If you are in a hurry, take the …………………… train.
a. sleeper **b. stopping** **c. express** **d. slow**

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We…………………… on holiday next week. I've already bought the tickets.
a. go **b. will go** **c. are going** **d. go to**

2. You have bought so many things! How much money did you……………………?
a. book **b. give** **c. take** **d. spend**

3. The English lesson…………………. at 10:15.

a. start b. will start c. starts d. is starting

4. Soha arrived …………………. school late.

a. in b.at c.on d.to

5. If we take the midday bus to Giza, we can…………………. to Cairo at 6 o'clock.

a. return b. spend c. take d. make

6- Let's walk quickly because the shop …………………. in ten minutes.

a. is closing b. closing c.closes d. is going to close

8- What time …………………. the bus arrive?

a. is b. does c. would d. do

9- Nadio can't visit you on Saturday. She ……….. her mother to prepare for a family party.

a. is helping b. helping c. helps d. going to help

10- …………………. the men climbing that mountain tomorrow?

a. Do b. Are c. Will d. Were

11- The bus to Aswan …………………. at ten past six this evening.

a. leave b. is leaving c. is going to leave d. leaves

12- I am hungry. I think I …………………. a sandwich.

a. will buy b. buy c. am buying d. is going to buy

13- My neighbours …………………. to a new house in Cairo next week.

a. move b. moves c. are moving d. moving

14- I am …………………. a meeting next Wednesday.

a. making b. doing c. talking d. having

15- It was a long Journey so we took the …………………. train.

a. sleeping b. return c. sleeper d. asleep

16- Helwan is the final…………………. on Cairo Metro.

a. intention b. destination c. travel d. flight

17- You can play computer games ………………….

a. line b. online c. phone line d. fishing line

18- I'm travelling to Port Said so I am going to …………………. a ticket.

a. pen b. ruler c. book d. notebook

19. On Sunday at 8 o'clock, I…………………. my friend.

a. meet b. am meeting c.will meet d. have met

20. The exam …………………. at 9.30. Don't be late!

a. starts b. start c.will start d. is starting

21. I promise I…………………. your secret to anyone.

a.don't tell b. am not going to tell c. am not telling d. won't tell

22. Hurry up! The match…………………. at eight as usual.

a) begins b) begin c) will begin d) is beginning

4. Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. He has planned to spend the summer holiday in Alexandria, (going to)
2. I'm going to build a new house, (intend)
3. Everything is arranged for holding our meeting tomorrow. (We)
4. Salma has just bought a train ticket to travel to Aswan, (travelling)
5. Heba has promised not to tell anyone about what happened, (won't)

6. The train from Cairo to Matrouh is at 8a.m. (leaves)
7. She has prepared her bag to travel to London, (going)
8. Ashraf arranged to build a new house. (building)
9. I promise to buy you a camera if you get high marks. (will)
10- What do you intend to study next year? (are)
11- I've decided to buy a new flat. (going)
12- My plan is to spend the summer holiday in Alexandria, (going to)
13- He has just decided to go to the theatre, (will)
14- What are your plans for the summer holiday? (going)
15. Abdullah will travel to Paris. Everything is okay. (is)

5-Write an email of SEVEN (7) sentences about one of the following:

1- A **journey** by **train**
2- A **place** you are going to **spend** the **weekend**
3 -A trip to Fayoum.
4- Your **plans** for the **future**.
5-Your **plan** about your **mid-year holiday**.

Unit 10 Travelling for work

LESSONS 3, 4 & 5

platform	رصيف	Air conditioning		نظام تكييف الهواء	
businessman	رجل اعمال	crowded	مزدحم	ferry	معدية
passenger	مسافر	Rail card	كارت اشتراك	coach	حافلة
price	الثمن	breeze	نسيم	condensation	تكثيف
huge	ضخم	final	نهائى	mind	يمانع
Express train		قطار سريع		statue	تمثال
Sleeping train	قطار مجهز للنوم	Sports centre		مركز رياضى	
Communication		اتصال		transport	نقل
distance	مسافة	explain	يفسر	exactly	بالضبط

Confusing words

breeze	نسيم	breathe	يتنفس
Air conditoning	نظام تكييف الهواء	Air conditoner	جهاز تكييف
price	ثمن	prize	جائزة
platform	رصيف محطة	pavement	رصيف شارع
station	محطة	Stop	موقف

Opposites

cheap	رخيص	expensive	غالى
arrival	الوصول	departure	المغادرة
miss	يفوته	catch	يلحق
inside	بالداخل	outside	بالخارج

Prepositions

Leave from	يغادر من	late for	متأخر على
On the platform	على الرصيف	Better at	افضل في
Problem with	مشكلة في	On a journey	في رحلة
Ask for	يطلب	In + time (5 minutes)	في خلال

Expressions

make it cooler	يجعله اكثر برودة	much faster	اكثر سرعة
It doesn't matter	لا يهم	ten minutes early	مبكرا عشر دقائق
have a good trip	اتمنى لك رحلة طيبة	A little bit late	متأخر قليلا
get ready	يستعد	It takes + time	يستغرق
has air conditioning	به تكييف	do a quiz	يؤدي اختبار قصير

Language Notes

get on – off يركب او ينزل من مواصلة

* I got on the bus and got off at the next stop.

a bus, a ferry, a horse, a plane, a train

get into – out of يركب او ينزل من سيارة او تاكسي

*He got into his car and drove away..

a car, a taxi

Journey رحلة طويلة

I enjoyed the journey to Luxor.

Trip رحلة قصيرة

He has arranged a trip to the park.

Flight رحلة طيران

They wished us a nice flight.

Voyage رحلة بحرية

Our voyage near the coast was nice.

Listening

SB 3

Businessman : Can I book a **ticket** to Alexandria, please?

Assistant : Certainly. Would you like a **single** or a **return**?

Businessman :I'd like a single,please.I'm spending a week there. What time is the next train?

Assistant :There's a **stopping train** at ten past ten. But the **express train** leaves at 10 a.m.; that's in fifteen minutes' time.

Businessman : Is the **express train** much faster?

Assistant : Oh yes, it is. The **stopping train** stops at lots of stations along the way, and the journey takes about four hours.

Businessman : How long does the **express train** take?

Assistant : It arrives at 12.50 p.m., so the journey takes two hours and fifty minutes.

Businessman : Has the **express train** got **air conditioning**?

Assistant : Yes, it has. You can also buy food and drinks on the train.

Businessman :I think I'll book the express, then. How much is that, please

Assistant : Have you got a **rail card**? It's cheaper with a rail card.

Businessman : No, I haven't.

Assistant : Without a rail card, it's 26 Egyptian pounds.

Businessman : Thank you. Could you tell me which platform the train leaves from?

Assistant : **Platform** 3. Have a good trip!

Businessman :Thank you! Goodbye

Classwork

Choose the correct answer from a, b,^oFd:n

1- Imod's father got…………………a taxi and asked the driver to take him to the station.
a. into **b. off** **c. at** **d. out of**

2- Most people travel in…………………class on planes.
a. economy **b. environment** **c. factory** **d. big**

3- Yesterday, we got …………………the bus at school and got off it outside our house.
a. into **b. on** **c. out** **a. of**

4- It's hot today, but the hotel room is cool because it has air …………………
a. communication **b. condensation** **c. conditioning** **d. cleaning**

5- There's a problem …………………my car engine.
a. to **b. with** **c. by** **d. at**

6- We usually get…………………the train ten minutes before it leaves.
a. into **b. off** **c. on** **d. out of**

7-Do you want to catch the stopping train or the …………………train?
a. express **b. platform** **c. long** **d. carriage**

8- Four tourists got …………………a car and took some photos of the statues in the park.
a. off **b. on** **c. out of** **d. of**

9- Mayor's cousin is going to live in Cairo, so she has bought a/an …………………ticket.
a. single **b. only** **c. express** **d. return**

10- Welcome to Cairo. Please get …………………the plane through the door at the front.

a. of b. off c. into d. with

Language functions

Buying /Booking a train ticket شراء/حجز تذكرة قطار

Can I book a single / return (ticket to Alexandria), please?	Sure , go on.
Would you like first or second class?	I'd like the first class.
How long does (the express train) take?	It takes two hours .
How much is that, please?	It's twenty six pounds.
What time is the next train?	It is at 3 o'clock.
Could you tell me which platform the train leaves from?	It leaves from platform 3

Classwork

1- Complete the dialogue

Passenger : I'd like a 1 .... to Port Said, please. What time is the 2 .... train؟

Assistant : There's an 3 .... train in half an hour .

Passenger : How 4 .... is that, please؟

Assistant : It's LE 20.

Passenger : How 5 .... does it take ؟

Assistant : It arrives after an hour. It leaves from 6 .... 4.

2- Write what you would say in each of the following situations:;

1- You want to know how long the journey to Alexandria takes.

2-Your train leaves on Saturday at 11.15a.m. You want to book a ticket.

3- You don't know which platform your train leaves from. Ask at the ticket office.

Homework

1- Finish the following dialogue:

A passenger is booking a ticket to Port Said

Passenger : I'd like a single ticket to Port Said, please. ..(1).......................................?

Assistant : There's an express train in half an hour.

Passenger : ...(2)..?

Assistant : It's LE 20 in economy class.

Passenger : How long does it take?

Assistant :...(3)...

Passenger : Could you tell me which platform the train leaves from?

Assistant : ...(4)..

2- Write what you would say in each of the following situations;

1- You wont to ask the assistant when the next train to Luxor leaves.

2- You are at the ticket office and you want to book a ticket.
3- An assistant asks you whether you want a single or return ticket.
4. You want to ask about the time of the train arrival from Luxor.
5. You have planned to spend the weekend in Hurghada.Tell your friend.

3- Read the following, then answer the questions:

Hi Magdy,

At the moment, I'm at Cairo Station with my father We're taking the sleeper train to Aswan tonight He has a meeting there tomorrow and he has asked me to go with him. The train leaves at 7 o'clock. There are a lot of other people who are waiting too, so the train is going to be busy.

Travelling by train is a great way to see the scenery of a country. I've been on this journey before. The beds are very comfortable. I know that we're going to arrive at our destination after a good night's sleep.

Booking tickets is easy: you can book online or buy tickets at a station.father bought us return tickets from Cairo to Aswan. The journey takes about 13 hours.

Best wishes

Samy

a.Answer the following questions:

1. How long does the journey to Aswan take ?
2. Why is the train going to be busy?
3- What kind of train are they taking to Aswan ?

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The train leaves at …………………..
a. 5 o'clock b. 7 o'clock c. 8 o'clock d. 10 o'clock
5. The beds of the train are …………………..
a. comfortable b. bad c. small d. uncomfortable

4- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1-Most office buildings in Egypt have air ……………………..
a. planes b. conditioning c. ambulances d. flights
2- A/An …………means travelling from one place to another, especially over a long distance.
a. ambulance b. trip c. journey d. scenery
3-The final……………………..of this train is Kafr El-Sheikh.
a. tradition b. condensation c. conditioning d. destination
4. When the bus arrived, the passengers ……………………..off.
a. took b. put c. sat d. got
5. The hotel room is cool as it has air……………………..
a. communication b. condensation c. conditioning d. cleaning
6. Maher decided not to come back from Cairo, so he booked a/an ……………………..ticket.
a. single b. return c. express d. stopping
7. I'm meeting my friend at 10 a.m at the……………………..centre.
a. sport b, sports c. sport's d. sports
8. Look out! The boy……………………..
a. falls b. is falling c. will fall d. is going to fall
9. We have our tickets, so we……………………..London in August!

a. go b. are going to c. are going d. will go

10- He is a good footballer. I think he ……………………a goal.

a. score b. is scoring c. is going to score d. will score

11- I ……………………a trip to Giza Zoo tomorrow. I have arranged everything.

a. I'm having b.'m going to have c. will have d. have

12- I promise I ……………………your family soon.

a. am going to visit b. will visit c. visits d. visiting

5-Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets togive the same meaning:

1 - Sameh intends to change his job. (going)
2- We have arranged to meet the manager tomorrow, (meeting)
3- What time is the next train to Cairo? (leave)
4. I have arranged to visit Alexandria next Friday. (visiting)
5. I intend to spend a week in Luxor next winter, (going)
6. I have just decided to buy a newspaper, (will)
7-What do you intend to do tomorrow? (are)
8-My train is at nine o'clock. (Leaves)
9- Salem is going to study in America, (intention)
10- When are you going to Alexandria? (arrange)

6-Write an email of seven(7) sentences about one of the following:

- a description of a journey you plan to go on a train,
- how you booked a ticket and made the Journey to Hurghada,

Or Write a paragraph of SEVEN(7) sentences on one of the

1- Travelling by train.
2- Your favourite means of transport.

unit 11 Making right choices LESSONS 1 & 2

Lung disease	مرض في الرئة	addict	يدمن	provide	يزود - يمد
operation	عملية جراحية	smoking	تدخين	damage	يتلف
organ	عضو(جسم انسان)	cough	يسعل - يكح	firefighters	رجال مطافي
pass	ينجح	possibility	احتمال	regret	يندم
Past situation	موقف ماضي	Persuade	يقنع	seat	مقعد
refuse	يرفض	leaves	ورق شجر	notebook	مفكرة-كراسة
degree	درجة علمية	heart	قلب	cause	سبب
fix	يصلح - يثبت	archaeologist	عالم اثار	coin	عملة
pharaoh	فرعون	gloves	قفازات	breathe	يتنفس
blog	مدونة	blood	الدم	pump	يضخ

Definitions

pass	ينجح	be successful in an exam
addicted	مدمن	unable to stop doing something
operation	عملية جراحية	when a doctor cuts into your body to help you get better
lung	الرئة	an organ which helps you breathe
disease	مرض	an illness

Opposites

correct	صحيح	incorrect	غير صحيح
better	افضل	worse	اسوء
pass	ينجح	fail	يفشل
able	قادر	unable	غير قادر

Prepositions

addicted to	مدمن ل	regret about	نادم على
For sure	بالتاكيد	Cut into body	يجرى جرح لجسم
help with	مشكلة في	difficuilt for	صعب ل
sorry for	حزين على	Leaves on the trees	اوراق علي الشجر

Expressions

fall asleep	يغلبه النعاس	do revision	يراجع
do very badly	يؤدى بطريقة سيئة	do an operation	يقوم بعملية جراحية
make a choice	يتخذ قرار	have an operation	تجرى له عملية جراحية
all the time	طوال الوقت	pass the exams	ينجح في الاختبار
have a problem	لديه مشكلة	get better	يتحسن

Language Notes

Stop + ing يتوقف عن فعل شئ

* Samy stopped smoking because it is dangerous.

Stop to + المصدر يتوقف لكي يفعل شئ

*I stopped to buy a book.

regret + ing يندم على شئ فعله

I regretted starting smoking.

Regret to + المصدر يأسف لانه مضطر لعمل شئ

I regretted to tell you that you lost.

Spend + time وقت يستغرق

I spend my free time reading

Spend + money مال ينفق

I have already spent all my money.

Pass ينجح – يجتاز

Aya passed all her exams.

Succeed in ينجح في

Aya succeeded in all her exams.

Because + جملة

I can't come because I was tired.

Because of + ing – اسم

I can't come because of being tired

Reading

What happened to Hamza?

Hamza was a student in my class. He was a successful student. He always worked hard and he was very good at English and maths. However he slowly changed and he stopped studying . I don't know for sure what changed Hamza. He smoked all the time. He may have become **addicted** to smoking. He should have talked to his parents, his friends or his teacher. They could have helped him with his problems. However, he coughed all the time and he became very ill. The doctors told Hamza that he had **lung disease** from too much smoking. He spent a lot of time in hospital and he didn't spend enough time studying. So he did not **pass** any of his exams that year . It must have been very diffcult for Hamza . He couldn't have enjoyed being ill. He must have been sorry for smoking. However ، life is better for Hamza now. I saw him last week. He had an **operation** and he is healthy now. He has stopped smoking and has started to study again. I am sure he will pass his exams this year!

Classwork

Choose the correct answer froma, b, c or d:

1-Sameh .... starting to smoke.

a got b. regretted c. smiled d. booked

2- Sameh has .... disease from too much smoking.

a.back b. lung c.eye d. head

1- Too much smoking can cause lung and heart ....

a. accident b. cough c. disease d. degree

2-I have had a/an .... to fix my leg, and now I can walk again.

a. accident b. operation c. disease d. illness

4- Don't drink too much coffee, or you'll be .... to it.

a. invited b. damaged c. healthy d. addicted

5- Maysa works very hard so I'm sure she'll .... the exams.

a. provide b.pass c. park d.fail

6- A..................... is an organ which helps you breathe.

a. leg b. hand c. lung d. eye

7.Osama is coughing all the time. I think he has a problem with his…………………

a. hearts b. legs c.lungs d. arms

8. My friends helped me………………… my problems. Sifk

a at b on c of d with

9. This exam must be difficult………………… the students.

a. for b. at c. off d. in

10. My father is a/an .... businessman. He has many great companies.

a. successful b. unsuccessful c. success d. succeed

GRAMMAR

Possibility in the past الاحتمال فى الماضى

may / might / could / should / must (not) have

may / might / could + have + P.P التصريف الثالث (ربما – قد)

• We use **may / might / could + have** + P.P تصريف ثالث to talk about possibility in the past:

تستخدم بمعنى(من المحتمل ان او من الممكن ان او ربما) للتعبير عن احتمال غير مؤكد لحدوث شئ في الماضي

I may have seen this film already. I can't remember.

Ali's arm hurts. He might / could have broken it.

I thought my answer was correct, but I may have been wrong.

تستخدم عادة مع التعبيرات الاتية

I'm not sure /not certain لست متأكد - It's probable من المحتمل - Perhaps ربما - it is likely من المحتمل - It's possible من الممكن - I don't think لا اعتقد ان - I don't know لست اعلم - I have no idea ليس لدي فكرة

Rewrite تدريب

1- It is possible that Menna went to the park. (might)

- Menna might have gone to the park.

2 - I don't know whether Ahmed broke the window or not. (might)

- Ahmed might have broken the window.

3- Perhaps Fatma came yesterday. (might)

- Fatma might have come yesterday.

4- I'm not sure Sara did her homework. (might)

- Sara might have done her homework.

must + have + P.P التصريف الثالث (من المؤكد ان)

• We use **must + have** + P.P تصريف ثالث to talk about things that we are sure happened in the past

تستخدم للتعبير عن احتمال مؤكد او استنتاج قوى مثبت فى الماضى

I **must have left** my notebook at home. (= I'm sure that I left it at home.)
There is no trains to Karim's village. He **must have taken** the bus.

can't / couldn't + have + P.P التصريف الثالث (لا يمكن ان يكون)

• To talk about things that we are sure did not happen in the past, we use could not (couldn't) + have + P.P تصريف ثالث

تستخدم للتعبير عن شئ لا يمكن ان يكون حدث فى الماضى

I **couldn't have left** it on the table. (= I'm sure it is not there.)

تستخدم عادة مع التعبيرات الاتية

I feel sure /I feel certain اننى متاكد– **certainly/ surely /definitely** بتالتاكيد
- impossible مستحيل

Rewrite تدريب

1- **I feel sure that** Rana **took** my camera yesterday, (must)
= Rana **must have taken** my camera yesterday.
2- **It is impossible that** Ali **got** up late. (couldn't)(must)
= Ali **couldn't have got** up late.
= Ali **must have got** up late.

should / shouldn't + have + P.P التصريف الثالث (كان ينبغى -كان من المفترض)

• We use should / shouldn't + have + P.P تصريف ثالث to express a regret about a past situation:

تستخدم للتعبير عن توصية فى الماضى او للتعبير عن الندم لخصوص حدث فى الماضى

I should have booked a seat on the train and now there are no seats left.
You shouldn't have gone to bed late last night. Now you are very tired!
- You **shouldn't have gone** to bed late last night. Now you are very tired! |
= You went to bed late.
- Hasnaa got very bad marks. She **shouldn't have wasted** her time.
= She wasted her time.

Rewrite تدريب

1- You got a fine because you parked here. (shouldn't)
= You **shouldn't have parked** here .

2- Ola didn't do her homework. Mr. Mohamed is angry with her. (should)

= Ola **should have done** her homework. Mr. Mohamed is angry with her

Classwork

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1 - Nawal ………………… have been very tired when she fell osleep on the bus home.

a. must b. should c. mustn't d. can

2- Hamdi can't find his bag. He ………………… have left it at the bus stop.

a. can b. might c. will d. mustn't

3- We ………………… have caught the earlier train. It's much quicker than this train.

a. might b. could c. must d. should

4- I thought my answer was correct, but I ………………… hove been wrong,

a. might b. should c. mustn't d. can

5- It………………… have been winter when they took these photos.There is snow on the ground.

a. can't b. must c. should d. might

6- The tourists ………………… have brought their coats to Egypt. They won't need them in the summer!

a. must b. shouldn't c. can d. will

7- Archaeologists think that the coin --------- - have belonged to an ancient pharaoh.

a. can b. should c. might d. will

8. You missed the start of the show. You………………… have arrived earlier.

a. must b. might c. should d. shouldn't

2. Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. Mahmoud scored a goal. I'm sure he did. (must have)
2. It was important for her to ask for help. (should have)
3. It is possible that Hala got good marks, (might have)
4. He must have travelled by plane, (sure)
5. It was important for us not to take that way. (shouldn't have)

Homework

1-Finish the following dialogue:

Tamer is at the doctor's because be is coughing all the time.

Tamer : Good evening, doctor. I'm Tamer.
Doctor : Good evening, Tamer. (1) ……………………………………………………………?
Tamer : I'm coughing all the time.
Doctor : (2) ……………………………………………………………………………………?
Tamer : For three days. Is it serious ?
Doctor : No. Don't (3) ………………………………………………………………… . It's flu.
Tamer : What should I do, then ?
Doctor : Just (4) ………………………………………………………………………………

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Hazem is suffering from heart…………………

a. disease b. organ c.coin d. cause

2. The…………………… which helps you breathe is the lung.

a. organ b. member c. part d. group

3- Dad was sad when I did …………………… in my exams.

a. bad b. badly c. good d. well

4- Ali needs to see a doctor as he is …………………… badly.

o- trying b. regretting c. booking d. coughing

5- He fell …………………… on the bus home.

a. asleep b. sleeping c. sleep d. slept

6- The blue laptop belongs …………………… me.

a. at b. for c. to d. on

7- It is sad that some people become …………………… to computer gomes.

a. upset b successful c. addicted d. hard

8. Ali had an accident. He………………… have driven so fast. I'm sure.

a. must b. couldn't c.may d. might

9. I'm not sure where my pen was. I ………………… have left it at school.

a. must b. couldn't c. should d. might

10. She………………… have been careful with driving. She had an accident.

a. must b. should c. shouldn't d. might

11. You look tired. You………………… have worked so much.

.a. should b. shouldn't c.must d. couldn't

12. Many can't find his keys. He………………… them in the office. I'm sure.

a. must have left b. might have left c. may have left d. couldn't have

13. Tamer must have………………… in Alexandria last summer. Look, he's in the photo.

a. be b.to be c.been d. being

14. Mahmoud …………………… have passed the exam. He is a clever student.

a. must b, couldn't c. may d. might

15. Mohammed…………………… have hidden his toy. It is possible,

a. must b. couldn't c. might d. can't

16. We should have…………………… the earlier train. It is much quicker than this train.

a. catch b. catches c. caught d. catching

17. Successful students always work ……………………

a. most b. much c. bad d. hard

18- I phoned him but he didn't answer. He…………………… have been asleep.

a. might b. should c. can d. mustn't

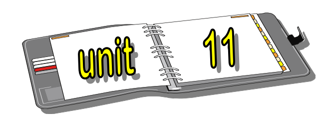
3-Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give thesame meaning:

1. Your little brother ate a lot of sweets and now feels ill. (shouldn't have)
2. I think Sherif worked out the difficult sum because he is too clever (must have)
3. I think my grandfather visited England in 1990, but I'm not sure. (might have)
4- It is not possible that you saw Mono yesterday. She is in Paris, (can't)
5- I'm sure that Hossam visited Luxor last month, (must)
6- You got a fine because you drove too fast. (shouldn't)
7- I am not sure Mono passed the test. (might)
8- I didn't study well for my exams lost year. (should)
9- I don't think Mustafa passed the test. (might)

10- Mr Ali was angry because you arrived late. (shouldn't)
11- It's possible that my sister bought a car. (might)
12-it\s certain that Hala was ill. (been)
13- We are sure that Eman wasn't in Cairo yesterday, (can't)
14- It wasn't polite to make that noise yesterday, (shouldn't)

4- Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences about one of the following

1- a situation when someone tried to persuade you to do somethingbut you refused.
2- smoking 3- Smoking is a dangerous habit
4- What you should have done to get high marks



Making right choices

LESSONS 3 , 4 & 5

Addiction	ادمان	Psychological	نفسى	Strong coffee	قهوة مركزة
Drugs	مخدرات	Success	نجاح	Habit	عادة
Rude	وقح	Successful	ناجح	Care	رعاية
cigarette	سيجارة	encourage	يشجع	Blame	يلوم
physical	بدنى	nicely	بلطف	Check	يفحص
upset	منزعج	scan	يفحص بدقة	presenter	مقدم برامج
presentation	عرض	reason	سبب	show	عرض(فنى)
Social networking sites		مواقع التواصل الاجتماعى		skills	مهارات

Confusing words

remember	يتذكر	Remind	يذكر
rude	وقح	road	طريق
Weak	ضعيف	week	اسبوع
better	افضل	bitter	مر

Opposites

useful	مفيد	useless	بلا فائدة
weak	ضعيف	strong	قوى
polite	مؤدب	rude	وقح

Prepositions

rude to	وقح مع	find about	يكتشف
On your own	بمفردك	Instead of	بدلا من
Tea with sugar	شاي محلى بسكر	At first	اولا
In what ways	بأي الطرق	Die from	يموت من

Expressions

Make sure	يتأكد	Take photos	يلتقط صور
Have an addiction	يدمن شئ	Have a cigarette	يدخن سيجارة
Look ill	يبدو مريضا	Make notes	يدون ملاحظات

Language Notes

Feel / become / get + صفة (يشعر – يصبح)

* He felt sad. We became happy .

Feel / look + صفة يبدو – يشعر

- You look upset.

To + ing

Addicted to / look forward to / be used to / in addition to + ing

I look forward to meeting my friends.

Listening

Presenter : In today's programme. Doctor Hamdi is talking to us about how people can become addicted to things. So, doctor, in what ways can addictions start?

Dr. Hamdi : Well, there ore two ways that people can become addicted to something. A physical addiction is when your body thinks that it needs something. For example, you may think that you must have a cigarette to wake up in the morning. Your body will think that something is wrong if you do not have that cigarette. It is very hard for people to stop feeling like this. When people who are addicted to smoking try to stop, they can feel very bad.

Presenter : What is the other way that people can be addicted?

Dr Hamdi : You can also hove a psychological addiction. This is when you think that you need something to feel OK. For example, some people are addicted to social networking sites. If they cannot use them, they start to feel unhappy.

Presenter : How do you know if someone is addicted to something?

Dr Hamdi : Sometimes you can see whenaperson is addicted,for example, if they are smoking all the time. But it is not always easy to see. Watch out for changes in people's habits. For example, a friend might have stopped going to school, or stopped seeing his or her friends or start being rude to their teachers or parents. They might become angry easily or start to look ill.

Presenter : So what should you do to help?

Dr Hamdi : First, you should try to talk to them. Then you must tell someone who can help them, for example a teacher.

Presenter : So how can you make sure that you do not become addicted to something yourself?

Dr Hamdi : You might find that your friends, or people that you know, will try to persuade you to try cigarettes, drugs or other things. If people ask you to try something that you don't want to try, don't be afraid to say no. Remember that people who say no are strong, not weak!

Presenter : Thank you, doctor.



Some people become **addicted** to using **social networking sites**. At first, they use them just to **send messages** to their **friends** and to find out what their friends are **doing**. However, some people need to **check** their social networking sites all the time. If they do not check them, they **begin** to **worry** or to feel **unhappy**. The best way to help these people is to suggest that they only use social networking sites for about half an hour. Suggest that they **phone** their **friends** instead of sending them **messages**. **Encourage** them to play a sport or make something instead of **looking** at their **mobile phones**!

Classwork

Choose the correct answer from a, b,c,or d:

1- The little boy was very …………………… after his brother broke his toy.

a. happy **b. glad** **c. excited** **d. angry**

2- Some people are addicted to social networking ……………………

a. sets **b. sites** **c. seats** **d. cities**

3- This basketball team are very …………………… They've won all their gomes this year.

a. careless **b. helpless** **c. successful** **d. colourful**

4-A …………………… is bad for you. Smoking is really dangerous.

a. car **b. cigarette** **c. cart** **d. carriage**

5- If something is …………………… it is to do with your body.

a. psychological **b. physical** **c. chemical** **d. electrical**

6- I try to be very …………………… when I visit my grandparents. I clean their kitchen and sweep the floor.

a. careful **b. helpless** **c. careless** **d. helpful**

7-This mobile phone is very …………………… It can send emails and takephotos.

a. harmful **b. useless** **c. useful** **d. painful**

Language functions

Expressing past recommendations التعبير عن توصيات فى الماضى

I think you should have + P.P التصريف الثالث
I think you should have tried the pizza last night
You shouldn't have + P.P التصريف الثالث
You shouldn't have stayed up late last night.

Explaining a choice in the past شرح اختيار فى الماضى

I really didn't want to + المصدر
I really didn't want to eat pizza. It isn't healthy.
I wasn't interested , thanks.

Expressing regret in the past التعبير عن الندم فى الماضى

I really shouldn't have + P.P التصريف الثالث because .....
I really shouldn't have bought this mobile because it is very expensive.

Persuading people to do something اقناع الناس بعمل شيئ ما

I really think that you should try this.
Why don't you play this (computer game)?
Go on! You'll enjoy it!
Refusing
No thanks, I really don't want to.
I think it's better if I don't.
I'm not interested, thanks.

Classwork

Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1- You think tennis is very exciting. You persuade your brother to play it.

2- Your friend persuades you to join chess club, but you don't have much free time.

3. You put more sugar in your tea. That was not necessary.

4. Your little brother ate a lot of sweets and he feels ill.

5- Your friend walked in the rain wearing a T-shirt.

6. You blame yoursefffor not revising for the exam well.

7. Your friend tried a cigarette last night

Homework

1- Finish the following dialogue:

Ali and Samy are talking about jobs.

Ali : What would you like to be ?
Samy : I'd like to be a doctor. ..(1)………………………………………………………………………?
Ali : Of course possible. (2)………………………………………………………………………….?
Samy : To help sick people recover from their illness.
Ali : Could you tell me the meaning of the word "addiction"?
Samy : (3)……………………………………………………………………………………………………… .
Ali : Tell me some kinds of addiction.
Samy : (4) ……………………………………………………………………………………………………… .

2-Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. Your friend regrets smoking a cigarette yesterday.
2. You want to know if your friend tried a new game online.
3. Your friend did very badly in the exams.
4. You wanted to go to the beach today, but your parents say that it is too windy.
5. You didn't want to eat pizza last night. Give a reason.
6. Your friend offers you a cigarette. You don't want to be addicted to it.

3- Read the following, then answer the questions:

Many doctors say that smoking is one of the causes of many diseases. All doctors agree that smoking is harmful to health. However, there aresome other things which cause diseases, such as pollution, chemicals which farmers use to protect their vegetables and crops.

Smoking also has a bad effect on the heart. If you don't smoke, never start and if you smoke, you should give it up. Many countries set laws to reduce the number of smokers. They prevented smoking in public transports and places- They raised the price of cigarettes, as well.

A- Answer the following questions:

1- What other things can cause diseases?
2- What did many countries do to reduce the number of smokers?
3- What does the writer want us not to do?

B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4-All doctors agree that smoking is …………………. to health.
a. careless b. harmless c. careful d. harmful

5- Farmers use …………………. to protect their crops.
a. fields b. farms c. chemicals d. clothes

4-Choose the correct answer from a, b / c or d:

1. The basketball team are very ……………………They have achieved a lot of championships this year.
a, successful b. careful c. helpful d. useful

2. The teacher……………………angry when we make something wrong.
a. behaves b. leaves c. gets d. gives

3. Most youth are addicted to……………………networking sites.

a. special b. social c. general d. public

4. you should never be ....to people. Always talk nicely.

a fdnd b. careful c. rude d. helpful

5. A physical ....is when your body thinks that it needs something.

a. addition b. addiction c. examination d. address

6. Please be ....when you carry those eggs!

a. careless b. careful c. helpless d. wonderful

7. You ....have seen Omar yesterday. He was in hospital.

a. might b. must c. could d, couldn't

8. The streets are wet. It.......................have rained yesterday.

a. must b. mustn't c. might d. couldn't

9. My grandma likes her coffee.......................sugar.

a. by b.in c-with d.to

10- Hossam ....have phoned you yesterday, but he forgot.

a. mustn't b. should c. might d. must

11- The game ....have finished at ten yesterday. I'm sure.

a. mustn't b. will c. might d. must

12.She ....have left for London last week. It is probable.

a. should b. must c. won't d. might

5-Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1-I tried the fish at the restaurant, but I regret it (shouldn't)

2-Sami was cold last night. He wore a coat. (must)

3- I think my father visited England in the 1990s, but I'm not sure. (might)

4. I'm sure that she was tired yesterday, (must have)

5. Amr's arm hurts. Perhaps he broke it. (might)

6. It wasn't a good idea to leave someone smoke without advising him. (shouldn't)

6-Write an email of SEVEN (7) sentences about one of the following:

1- You were planning to meet your friends an hour ago, but they haven't arrived. What do you think might, must or couldn't have happened ?

2- You try to help your friend give up addiction.

Or Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences on one of the following:

1- Something you ore addicted to

2- A good habit you want to start

3- A bad habit you want to stop

4- Reading

unit 12 Transport workers LESSONS 1 & 2

manager	مدير	Building site	موقع بناء	copy	ينسخ
proud	فخور	experience	خبرة	workers	عمال
especially	خصوصا	tiring	متعب	Metro line	خط مترو
manual	يدوى	guide	مرشد	advantage	ميزات
transport	نقل	include	يشمل	warn	يحذر
helmet	خوذة	report	تقرير	wall	حائط-سور
project	مشروع	order	يطلب - يرتب	snake	ثعبان
boots	حذاء برقبة	partner	شريك	further	ابعد

Definitions

manager	مدير	Someone who tells you what to do each day.
buildings	مبانى	Houses, hotels and factories are examples of buildings.
proud	فخور	To be pleased because of doing or having something good.
Especially	خصوصا	much more than usual
Manual	يدوى	working with your hands.

Confusing words

experiment	تجربة علمية	experience	خبرة
boots	حذاء برقبة	boats	قوارب
warn	يحذر	warm	دافئ

Opposites

team	فريق	individual	فردى
manual	يدوى	auomatic	اوتوماتيكى
tiring	متعب	comfortable	مريح
advantages	ميزات	disadvantages	عيوب

Prepositions

In the middle of	فى منتصف	Proud of	فخور ب
On a project	فى مشروع	Work for	يعمل لحساب
On th metro line	على خط المترو	Breathe in	يستنشق

With your hands	باستخدام يدك	Go on	يستمر

Expressions

leave school	ينهي دراسته	feel proud	يشعر بالفخر
much more than	اكثر كثيرا من	the first to	اول من
look out for	يحذر من	part of a team	جزء من فريق
such an exciting film	فيلم شيق جدا	work experience	خبرة العمل

Language Notes

Work on (project) يعمل على تطوير

* My uncle works on a project in Cairo.

Work with يعمل مع

*I like working with a group.

Work for (company) يعمل لدى - لصالح

My brother works for a big company.

Work as يعمل ك (وظيفة)

My sister works as a dentist in Damietta.

Job وظيفة (اسم يعد)

My father found a new job.

Work عمل (اسم لا يعد)

Manual work is very tiring.

Works اعمال ادبية

Proud of + اسم - (ing) فخور ان

I'm proud of my country.

Proud to + المصدر

I'm proud to be a teacher.

Much - little ممكن استخدامها قبل الصفات لايضاح فرق الدرجة فى الصفة

Omnya is much taller than Sara. **My car is little more expensive than yours.**

Reading

Dear Hassan,

I'm writing this email after my frst day at work. I am working on a project for a big new **building** in the middle of Cairo. The project is to build a station for part of the new metro line.When I arrived at the building site, the **manager** ordered me to wear a helmet and boots. He warned me to look out for things falling, **especially** if I'm under the ground. He asked me to tell him about my work experience. I told him that it was my frst job. Then he said that I should work with a group of men who are building a wall around the new station. Manual work like this is very tiring, but I enjoyed being part of a team. The manager told me that the new metro would open in 2022. The station I am working on is one of 15 new stations on the line. When it is fnished, there will be 1.5 million more passengers on the line. I am **proud** to help with such an exciting project!

Ragab

Classwork

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Houses, hotels and factories are examples of ....

a. sites **b. managers** **c. buildings** **d. cities**

2- If you are..........................of something, you are pleased because it is good.

a. proud **b. manual** **c. tired** **d. worried**

3-The ....is always the first to arrive in the office.

a. factory **b. manager** **c. project** **d. building**

4-..........................work is often very tiring.

a. Easy **b. Middle** **c. Falling** **d. Manual**

5- Canada is..........................cold in winter.

a. special **b. proudly** **c. especially** **d. historical**

6- Hatem's father ....him not to swim in the dangerous.

a. completed **b. felt** **c. invited** **d. warned**

7- Leila's mother ....her to learn how to cook.

a. encouraged **b. warned** **c. forgot** **d. worked**

8- The manager asked me to tell him about my work ....

a. experiment **b. exam** **c. experience** **d. exercise**

9- Our school is not a very old ....It was built in 2005

a. metro **b. teacher** **b. manager** **d. building**

6- ....workers often have to wear boots and helmets.

a. Manual **b. Office** **c.Automatic** **c.Tiring**

7- Tana's uncle ....his friends to have a glass of juice.

a. ordered **b. invited** **c. said** **d. meant**

8- At the airport, they ---------- us to show our passports.

a. ordered **b. warned** **c. said** **d. invited**

GRAMMAR

Reported speech الكلام غير المباشر

الكلام المباشر هو الكلام الفعل الذى قاله الشخص و ياتى بين علامات تنصيص "   "

Amira **said** ,"I'm going to school."

الكلام غير المباشر هو الكلام الذى ينقله شخص ما عن شخص اخر ولا ياتى بين علامات تنصيص "   "

Amira **said** that she was going to school.

Statements الجمل الخبرية

لتحويل الجملة الخبرية نتبع الاتى

(١) told تحول الى said to   said تبقى كما هى said

(٢) تحذف الاقواس و توضع "that" و يمكن حذفها

(٣) يتم تحويل الضمائر حسب المتكلم و المتكلم اليه

صفات الملكية

my	his / her
Your	my / our
our	their

ضمائر المفعول

me	him / her
You	me / us
us	them

ضمائر الفاعل

I	he / she/ I
You	I / we
we	they

(٣) يتم تحويل الظروف الزمنية و اسماء الاشارة كالاتى

التعبيرات الزمنية

today	that day	tonight	That night
tomorrow	The following day	now	then
Yesterday Last week	The day before The week before	ago	before

اسماء الاشارة و ظرف المكان

this	that
these	those
here	there

(٤) لا يتم تغير الازمنة داخل الاقواس اذا كان فعل القول فى زمن المضارع (Say, says – tell, tells)

(٥) اما اذا كان فعل القول فى الماضى (said-told) يتغير حسب الجدول الاتى :

Present simple مضارع بسيط	Past simple ماضى بسيط
" I study Arabic at school" said Ali. Hana said , " I don't want to watch TV."	Ali said that he studied Arabic at school. Hana said that she didn't want to watch TV.
Present continuous مضارع مستمر	**Past continuous ماضى مستمر**
" I am playing football" said Ahmed.	Ahmed said that he was playing football
Present perfect مضارع تام	**Past perfect ماضى تام**
Nehal said ," I have finished my work."	Nehal said that she had finished her work.
Model verbs الافعال الناقصة Can / will/ must / may / shall	**Model verbs الافعال الناقصة** Could / would/ had to / might / should
Samy said , " I can play tennis on Friday."	Samy said that he could play tennis on Friday.

- He told me that the sun rises in the east.لا نغير الزمن مع الحقائق و تظل فى زمن المضارع البسيط

Say (said)(شخص) لا ياتى بعدها مفعول
Say to (said to) ياتى بعدها مفعول و تاتى دائما فى الكلام المباشر
Tell (told) ياتى بعدها دائما مفعول و تاتى دائما فى غير المباشر

The imperative الجمل الخبرية

لتحويل الجمل الامرية و الطلبات نتبع الاتى

(١) told , ordered , asked تحول الى said , said to

(٢) نحذف الاقواس و نربط ب to اذا كان الامر مثبت

(٣) نحذف الاقواس و نربط ب not to اذا كان الامر منفى

(٤) تحول الضمائر حسب المتكلم و المخاطب

(٥) نحذف Could you , Can you اذا كانت طلب مؤدب

(٦) نحذف Please

" Breathe in." the doctor said. The doctor **told me to** breathe in.

" Tidy your room." said my mother. My mother **ordered me to** tidy my room.

" Don't eat too many sweets," said the doctor.
The doctor **told me not to** eat too many sweets.

" Please, don't be late" said the teacher. The teacher **advised us not to** be late.

Rewrite تدريب

1- "Don't copy from the internet!" said our teacher, (warned)
- Our teacher **warned us not to** copy from the internet.

2-"Run faster!" I said to my friend, (told)
- I **told** my friend **to** run faster.

3- Ali said to me, "I feel hot and thirsty." (told)
-Ali **told me that he felt** hot and thirsty.

4- Omar said , " I'd like to invite you to come to a wedding party." (invited)
- Omar invited me to a wedding party.

5- " Go on! You can answer the question." Dina's sister said to her. (encouraged)
- Dina's sister encouraged her to answer the question.

Classwork

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My father asked us .... watch too much TV.
a. don't b. not to c. that d. whether

2. The teacher...................... the students to be quiet.
a. said b. said to c.told d. told to

3. His father said," .... speak loudly. Ali"

a. Didn't b. Aren't c. Doesn't d. Don't

4. The driver told the mechanic to........................ the car.

a. cleaning b. clean c. cleans d. cleaned

5. Ahmed said........................ he had bought a new car.

a. to b. that c. if d. when

6. Dina told her sister that they .... a camera.

a. buy b.will buy c. would buy d. buys

7. She said that she.................... then.

a. is painting b. had painted c. will paint d. was painting

8. Mona said to me "We........................ the countryside next week."

a. would visit b. visited c. have visited d. will visit

9. Hatem's father........................ him not to swim in the dangerous river.

a. warned b. said c. say d. tell

10- The manager .... me to wear a helmet and boots.

a.ordered b.say c. tell d.said

2. Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. "Turn off your phones!" the professor said to the students, (ordered)
2. "Don't waste your time on your laptop." said my father, (not to)
3. "The doctor said to the patient." Take this medicine regularly" (advised)
4. My uncle said, "I will come again next week." (that)
5. "I can swim in this canal.", Heba said to me. (told)

Student book

1 "English is our favourite subject," my friends told me.
- My friends told me that English was their favourite subject.

2 "I am learning how to swim," said Tarek.

3 "The new shop will open in two weeks' time," Sara told us.

4 "My sister wants to buy a book," said Ahmed.

Homework

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Some people like .... work as it makes their bodies strong.

a. hand b. office c. manual d. mental

2. A worker should .... a helmet and boots.

a. wear b.do c.put d. catch

3. There are too many........................ on the train. I can't find a place to put my leg.

a. cars b. carriages c. passengers d. carts

4- Such o project needs o lot of money ond workers who have much ....

a. experience b. exercise c. exams d. examples

5- Your .... at work tells you what to do each day.

a. factory b. manager c. cleaner d. race

6- The doctor asked my father …………………… smoke.

a. won't b. don't c.to d. not to

7- The teacher said to Sami," …………………… make noise during the lesson."

a. Not to b. Doesn't c. Don't d. Not

8- My sister asked me to give …………………… my mobile phone,

a. she b. him c. them d. her

9- He warned me …………………… out for things falling.

a. look b. to look c. looked d. not Look

10- Soha …………………… Asmaa that she needed to leave then.

a. said b.told c.told to d.says

11- Ahmed told Alaa that he …………………… Alexandria the week before.

a. had visited b. is visiting c. will visit d. is going to visit

12- Gamal told Samir …………………… he had found his lost book.

a. to b. not to c.that d. to not

13-We asked the waiter …………………… us some water.

a.brought b. bring c. not bring d. to bring

14. "Don't touch the snake," Nawal …………………… Ola.

a. said b. told to c. said to d. says

15- Hossam told me that he…………………… to Alexandria the week after.

a. travelled b. had travelled c. would travel d. will travel

2. Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. "Please come to my house." I said to the cleaner, (invited)
2. "Don't sit on that wall!" the tour guide said to Maha, (warned)
3. "I watched the match yesterday." Ramy said to Magdy. (told)

4- "English is our favourite subject." (My friends told me)

5. " I am learning how to swim." (Tarek told me)
6. "Never go to the sea alone without telling me." (Father warned Alaa)

7- Hassan told Ali that he would travel to Cairo, (said to)

8-"Stand up," (The teacher ordered the class)

9-"The museum is next to the park." (Mr El-Baz told Omar)

10- "Don't walk on the road, Hatem!" (Hatem's mother told him)

11- Hony told Ayman that he was eating then. (now)

12- Ola told the teacher that she didn't understand the lesson, (said to)

13- Ali has just said to me, "I have too much homework to do." (told)

14-"The museum is next to my school." Randa said to Reem. (her)

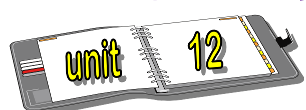
3-Write a paragraph of seven (7) sentences about one of the following:

1 - manual work and office work

2 - your manager

3- The importance of the metro project in Cairo

4- A job you would like to do



Transport workers

Lessons 3 , 4 & 5

deal	يتعامل	extremely	للغاية	incredibly	لا يصدق
industry	الصناعة	fairly	تقريبا	percent	في المائة
technology	تكنولوجيا	inspector	مفتش	repair	يصلح
bike catcher	منتشل الدراجات	really	حقا	dual	ثنائي
farming	الزراعة	journalist	صحفي	cleaners	عمال النظافة
nursing	التمريض	pilot	طيار	system	نظام
graduate	يتخرج	organise	ينظم	conclusion	خاتمة
electrician	كهربائي	quite	الي حد ما	Work sites	مواقع العمل
General education		التعليم العام		article	مقال

Confusing words

deal	يتعامل	dial	يتصل
quite	الي حد ما	quiet	هادئ
percent	في المائة	present	هدية
Every day	كل يوم	everyday	يومي

Prepositions

Angry with	غاضب من شخص	At university	في الجامعة
Deal with	يتعامل مع	For example	على سبيل المثال
Important for	ذو اهمية ل	Break down	يتعطل
Learn about	يتعلم عن	Around Egypt	في جميع انحاء مصر

Expressions

Give an example	يعطي مثالا	Keep ... safe	يحافظ على سلامة
Sixty percent of	٦٠ ٪ من	Take a train	يستقل قطار
Have problems	لديه مشاكل	What kind of	مانوع

Language Notes

Technician شخص فني لاصلاح الاجهزة

* I need a technician to fix my tablet .

Technical فني (متعلق بالمهن)

• Tchnical education has become a must.

Electricity كهرباء electrical كهربي (ذو صلة بالكهرباء) electrician فني كهرباء

each week = a week = per week كل اسبوع

We go to school 5 days each /a / per week.

hundred – thousand – million اذا جاء قبلها رقم تظل في حالة المفرد و يجمع الاسم

I paid three thousand pounds for my mobile.

LISTENING

Journalist : A railway station **manager** 's **job** is very **important**, but not many people **know about** it. Today I'm **talking** to the **manager** of one of Cairo's **busiest** station . So, Mr Ahmed, what **does** a station **manager** do?

Manager : Well, the most important part of a station manager's job is to keep everyone safe in the railway station, and to help people to get onto the correct train.

Journalist : But you have other people to help you to do this, don't you?

Manager : Of course. I must manage all the other people who work at the station. There ore a lot of them: train drivers, ticket inspectors, cleaners, mechanics and engineers. I must encourage them to do their jobs well and most of them work really hard. I must also help them if there are any problems.

Journalist : How often do you hove problems at the station?

Manager : There is never a day without a problem! Sometimes I have to deal with fairly small problems, for example, a person loses something important or takes the wrong train. Sometimes I have to help with extremely bigproblems, for example, a person becomes ill or a train breaks down.

Journalist : So what would you say to someone who wants tobecome a station manager?

Manager : Well. the job is never boring. You must like trains,of course, but you must also like people. You meetdifferent people every day. These people can be quite angry if their train is late. They often tell me to find them a different train!

Journalist : What do you say to them?

Manager : I encourage them to be patient and I try to help them.

We work in an incredibly busy station and people usually understand that there are sometimes problems.

Journalist : It sounds a very interesting job. Thank you!



Technical schools

* After finishing Preparatory School at 15, some students choose to stay in general education, but about sixty percent of students go to technical schools.

* Students at technical schools learn skills that they can use in the world of work. These skills are extremely important for the future of the country. Because technology changes all the time, the skills that people need today are very different to what was needed ten or twenty years ago.

•There are now many more technical schools around Egypt and each school teaches a different kind of technical skill. For example, students can learn about work in hotels and shops, or learn skills needed for industry,farming or nursing. Students study at these schools for three or five years.

• Under the Egyptian Dual Education system, technical school students spend two days each week at technical school and four days at a place of work, where they can practise using their new skills.This can really help the students after they graduate.

• Students who do very well at technical schools can then continue to study at university. They con get very good jobs, such as becoming engineers. However, all jobs that need technical skills are important. Life would be impossible without electricians, nurses, mechanics, and farmers.

READING WORKBOOK

Bike catchers are people who **take bikes** from **canals** in **Amsterdam**, a city in Europe. There are no **hills** in the city so a lot of people **cycle** to school and to work. In fact, **thirty percent** people in Amsterdam travel to work by **bike**. The city also has a lot of **canals** and sometimes the **bikes** fall into the water. Perhaps this is because there are more bikes in the city than people! In the **1960s**, there were so many **bikes** in the canals that they began to **damage** the **bottom** of boats. That is when the job of **bike catchers** began. One bike catcher told me that they take **14,000 bikes** out of the **canals** each year!

Classwork

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- The manager told the …………………. to clean all the classrooms andHdesks,

a. cleaner **b. teacher** **c. secretary** **d. inspector**

2- The train …………………. warned us not to open the train door.

a. pilot **b. manager** **c. inspector** **d. baker**

3- Students in …………………. education do not go to technical schools.

a. real **b. general** **c, different** **d. technical**

4- ………………… is very important because it gives us most of the food we eat.
a. Industry b. Station c. Nursing d. Farming

5-The ………………… advised the driver to change the oil of the car engine.
a. mechanic b. electrician c. nurse d. cleaner

6- The most important part of a station manager's job is to keep everyone ………………… in the railway station.
a. save b. angry c. sad d. safe

7-Mechanics need many………………… to understand how cars work.
a.skills b. education c. schools d. managers

8- My teacher always tells us to ---------- English at home.
a. deal b. break c. practise d. leave

Language functions

Asking for opinion طلب الرأى

What do you think of …………………………. ?	ماراأيك فى
What is your opinion about ………………?	ماراأيك فى
Could you give me your opinion of …?	هل ممكن تعطينى رأيك فى

Making opinion stronger تقوية الرأى

quite الى حدما very جدا really حقا extremely للغاية

These people can be quite angry if their train is late. I'm quite interested in pizza.
A railway station manager's job is very important. Giza is a very big city
Most of them work really hard. The match is really exciting
Sometimes I have to help with extremely big problems. Cairo is extremely crowded.



1-Choose the correct words

1. The desert is quite / extremely hot in the summer.
2. A mouse is a quite / really small animal.
3. It is extremely / quite diffcult to learn to write Chinese.
4. It is quite / really expensive to stay in the best hotel in the world.
5. Jordan is quite / extremely big, but it is not as big as Egypt.

2- Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You have just finished the hardest test you have ever done. Your mother asks you how the test was.
2. You visited England in winter. It was the coldest place that you have been to. A friend asks you what the weather was like.
3. You admire koshari very much. Express this.
4. Your friend asks you about your opinion of the desert in summer.

Homework

1- Finish the following dialogue:

Two students are doing a quiz about jobs.

Salma : Who serves food in the restaurant ?
Mona : (1) ………………………………………………………………………………………?
Salma : Really it's an amazing job. (2) ……………………………………………………?
Mona : He fixes broken-down cars.
Salma :Where does a ticket inspector work ?
Mona : (3)…………………………………………………………………………………
Salma : (4) ……………………………………………………………………………………?
Mona : I'd like to be a doctor.

2-Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. A friend asks you about the weather in the desert in July.
2. Someone offers you some cheese pizza. You don't like it.
3. You think that football is very interesting. You are interested in it.
4. You are asked for your opinion of a dress your friend has bought.
5. Your father asks what you think about the hard test you have done.
6. You express your strong opinion of the electrician's job.

3- Read the following then answer the questions:

My brother Omar is forty-three years old. He works in a big factory which is far away from our house. He usually gets up at seven o'clock every morning. He has a good breakfast and leaves for work at eight o'clock. He usually drives his car to work and gets there at 8:30. Yesterday, he did not get up at seven as usual, he got up at six. He did not have his usual breakfast. He had only some biscuits and a cup of tea. He left for work an hour earlier because his car was at the mechanic's and he had to take the bus. Omar went to the bus stop and waited for half an hour for the bus, but it didn't come. So, he had to walk to the factory where he works. He did not **get** there on time, so the factory manager was very angry.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. How does Omar usually go to work?
2. How long did Omar wait for the bus?
3. Why do you think the manager was angry with Omar?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "**get**" means …………………………
a) finish **b) reach** **c) leave** **d) change**
5. Omar had some………………………… for breakfast yesterday.

a) biscuits only
b) biscuits and a cup of coffee
c) biscuits and a cup of tea
d) biscuits and some jam

4- Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d:

1. The museum is a beautiful…………………………. It was opened in 1881.

a. build b. building c. buildings d, builder

2. ………………………….schools teach students the skills needed for the world of work.

a. Technical b. Skill c. Primary d. Secondary

3. The………………………….told the workers in the factory to finish their work on time.

a. baker b, waiter c. manager d. officer

4- Students in ………………………….education do not go to technical schools.

a. busy b. general c. different d. technical

5- …………………………. used to be the job for most of the Egyptian people. They grew most of their food.

a. Nursing b. Farming c. Driving d. Industry

6. I am going to............................... the 6 o'clock train to go to work on time.

a. take b. miss c. leave d. see

7. No one can believe this. This man is.............................. tall; 220 cm.

a. incredible b. simple c. incredibly d. simply

8. I told the teacher………………………….Soha was ill.

a. if b.to c. not to d.that

9. Mona ………………………….Ali was in the zoo then.

a. said b. said to c. told d. ordered

10. I advised him………………………….stay up late at night.

a. don't b. if c. to d. not to

11- Soha ………………………….Asmaa that she needed to leave then.

a. said b. told c. told to d. says

12- Ahmed told Alaa that he………………………….Alexandria the week before.

a.had visited b. has visited c. will visit d. is going to visit

13- Mr teacher advised me ………………………….waste my time.

a to b. not to c. that d. not that

14. Samir………………………….he was tired because of heavy work.

a. said to b. said c. told d. asked

5-Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. He said to the teacher "I don't understand the lesson." (that)
2. "Don't leave your bag here." Mohamed said to Rahma. (warned)
3. "Please lend me your dictionary, Wael." said Soha. (asked)
4- "Stand up, please," the teacher said to Ali. (ordered)
5- "Never go to the sea alone without telling me". (Father warned Alaa)
6- "I'm coming home at eleven.". Khalid said to his mother, (told)
7. "Don't touch the snake," Nawal said to Ola. (warned)
8. "Stand up," the teacher said to the class, (ordered)
9. "Go on! You can swim across the pool!" Mazin's father said to him. (encouraged)

6-Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences about one of the following:

1- some useful advice a teacher or a friend has given you
2- some skills that you need for the world of work
3- The underground metro.
4- Education in Egypt.
5- A five-year technical school near your home.
6- A job you hope to apply for.

Revision D

Reading

Last week, our teacher told us **to research** information about airports. He advised us **to use** the Egyptian Knowledge Bank to find out information. In the next lesson, Omar told us about Marsa Alam International Airport. He told us that it **might have been** diffcult for tourists to get to the Red Sea before the airport was built. Today, the airport is open for 24 hours a day and every hour 1,200 passengers can travel through it.

Then Haytham told us about Osaka Airport in Japan. Because it was next to many buildings, the old Osaka Airport could not grow. In the 1980s, Japan encouraged architects **to plan** a new airport at sea. **Building** a new island for the airport must have been very diffcult. When it opened in 1994, the airport was the most expensive building project ever! The teacher then asked me **to talk** about Barra Airport. This airport is on a small island in the north of Britain, where planes land on a beach. I told the class that tourists often walked on the beach, so people warn them **to be** careful when planes are going to land! Next week, the students in our class **are giving** a talk about railway stations. I think that this **will be** interesting! to research

Listening

Amir : Nabil, have you decided where you are going on holiday this summer yet?

Nabil : Well, my parents and I have looked at some interesting destinations and my uncle has encouraged us to go to Luxor. He told us that Luxor is a great place, but we can't decide on how to get there from Cairo.

Amir :What are you thinking of?

Nabil : We are planning to either go by train or drive. I think it will be much slower to drive, but I also think it'll be more exciting. For example, we can stop at different places on the way.

Amir : How long does it take to drive?

Nabil : It takes about twelve hours. Why?

Amir :I don't think I could sit in a car for so long.I prefer being on a train.

Nabil: The train is faster, but sometimes the train is late and you can't take many bags on the train. Sometimes the stations are busy, too. Last time we had to wait to buy our tickets and the train almost left without us!

Amir :That must have been diffcult! I'm going to Aswan next week and I was advised to be at the station thirty minutes before the train leaves to buy a ticket. How much do the train tickets cost?

Nabil : A train ticket is quite expensive, although you have special prices with a railcard.

Amir : I see, so it is probably cheaper to drive.

Nabil : Yes, it is. You can take more bags in the car, too.

Amir :I think that you've made your decision then.

Nabil : Yes, I know what I want to do, but my parents are goingto decide. Why don't you come with us? We'll have a great time.

Amir :Sorry,I can't come because my cousin has invited me to visit him in Alexandria.

Nabil : Your cousin Omar?

Amir :Yes,he told me to visit because I haven't seen him for so long.

Nabil :You'll enjoy visiting him. It's really nicem in Alexandria.



1-Finish the following dialogue:

A man is buying a ticket at a train station.

Man : Good morning. (1).... (**Can I book a ticket to Luxor, please?)**

Assistant : To Luxor ? Of course. (2) ...**(Would you like a single or a return**?)

Man : A return, please . I'm coming back on Tuesday.

Assistant : That's LE100. The next train leaves in 30 minutes.

Man :..(3)... (**Could you tell me which platform the train leaves from?)**

Assistant : The train leaves from platform 2.

Man : ..(4).... (**Platform 2? Thank you very much**.)

2-Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1 You have just fnished the hardest test that you have ever done. Your mother asks you how the test was. **It was extremely/incredibly diffcult**

2 You are taking a bus from Cairo to Alexandria. You want to know how long you will spend on the bus. **How long does the bus take?**

3 You wanted to go to the beach today, but your parents say that it is too windy.
I wish that it was not windy./What a pity that it is windy.

3-Read the following, then answer the questions:

Hi Ragab

I am very sorry that I didn't come to your house yesterday. I'll tell you why. I left home to catch the bus at four o'clock. The bus broke down and did not arrive, so I waited for the next **one**, which was at half past four. The bus arrived, but before I got on the bus, an old man came out of a shop. He was carrying some heavy bags. The bus driver told me to help him with his bags. He thought that the man wanted to get on the bus. I offered to help him, but he asked me to carry the bags to his car. I carried his bags and put them in his car boot. I did not catch the bus at half past four. I was too late to go to your house so I didn't wait for the fve o'clock bus. I was not happy when I got home, but my father told me that I was kind to help the old man.

Best wishes
Taha

1 Why didn't Taha catch the bus at four o'clock?

Because the bus broke down and did not arrive

2 Why do you think that the bus driver did not wait for Taha?

Because Taha spent a long time helping the old man with his bags

3 Why was Taha not happy when he went home?

Because it was too late to go to Ragab's house

4 What does the underlined word one refer to?

a.Ragab's house b. Taha's house c.the next bus d.the bus at fve o'clock

5 What do you think the word boot means?

a.a space for bags in a car b.a kind of boat c.a kind of car d.a place to keep cars

C. The Reader

4 a. Match column A with column B:

	A		B
1-	Black Beauty	a.	liked the latest fashion.
2-	Ginger	b.	was the horse Lady Anne liked to ride.
3-	York	c.	said, "if they don't tighten the reins more, I will do what they ask me."
4-	Lady Smythe	d.	was much smaller than Earl Smythe's house at Earlshall Park.
	1-b 2-c 3-e 4-a	e.	was Earl Smythe's helper.

b. Answer the following questions:

1. In what ways was Earlshall Park better than Birtwick Park?

It was bigger and more modern

2. Why did Lady Smythe use special reins to keep the horses' heads held high?

Because it was the latest fashion.

3. Why was it very diffcult for the horses to pull a carriage up a hill?

Because they could not put their heads down when they were wearing the reins.

4. Do you think that Ginger was right to start to kick? Why / Why not?

Yes, because she was very uncomfortable./No. She should have worked hard like Black Beauty.

5. How do we know that York cared about Ginger and Black Beauty?

We know that York cared about them because he was angry that they wore the special reins. He helped them when they were hurt.

5- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ayten told me she...................... early the next day on a trip.

a. is leaving b. left c.was leaving d. will leave

2. Mona looks very happy. She...................... done well in the exam.

a. mustn't have b. must have c. can't have d.should have

3. The teacher asked us...................... talk.

a. don't b.not c. not to d.no

4. What is the...................... of the number 10 bus?

a. arrival b. destination c. meeting d.stop

5. Some students work in the holidays to...................... some money.

a. spend b.lose c.give d.earn

6. Egypt can be …………………. hot in August.

a. special **b. excellent** **c. especially** **d. specialised**

6- Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1 "Stand up, please," the teacher said to Ali. (ordered)

The teacher ordered Ali to stand up.

2 Sami didn't come to the party. No one invited him. (can't)

Sami must have been cold last night. He wore a coat

3 Amr's arm hurts. Perhaps he broke it. (might)

Amr might have broken his arm

8.Write a paragraph of seven (7) sentences on one of the following

- some useful advice a teacher or friend has given you
- the importance of technical schools



1-Finish the following dialogue:

Nevine and Lamia are at the ticket offce of a museum.

Assistant : Unfortunately, the museum is closed today.

Nevine : Oh no. (1)…… (**What a pity**) ! I didn't know that.

Lamia : Didn't you look at the website? It has all the times there.

Nevine : I'll look next time.

Lamia : (2) **When are you open/When can we visit the museum** .

Assistant : You can come on any other day, although don't come on Saturday. (3)…(**Why shouldn't we visit on Saturday**) . It's diffcult to see things because there are so many people!

Lamia : (4)…. (**Perhaps we can come tomorrow**.)

Assistant : Tomorrow is perfect.

2-Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1 You visited England in the winter. It was the coldest place that you have been. A friend asks you what the weather was like.

It was incredibly/extremely cold

2 You want to book a ticket for the train from Cairo to Luxor. You are coming back on Thursday.

Can I book a return ticket to Luxor, please?

3 You see a news report about poor people who live in Asia. You would like to be able to help them.

I wish that I could help these people

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

In the last few years, I have travelled on some of the world's longest train journeys. First, I went on the longest train journey in the world. Taking nearly a week, it goes from Moscow to the east of Russia. My mother thought that I would be bored, but I loved it. Then a friend advised me to take the train from Shanghai to Lhasa in China. **It** takes

about two days. People warned me that the train goes incredibly high into the mountains and it can be diffcult to breathe, but I had no problems. Finally, I travelled in Australia from Perth to Sydney. Taking the world's straightest railway for four days was unforgettable. I travelled on my own. However, I have encouraged some of my friends to come with me next time.

1 How long is the world's longest train journey?

It takes nearly a week.

2 Why do you think that his mother thought he would be bored?

Because it is a very long journey and there might not be very much to do on the train

3 What does the underlined word it refer to?

The train from Shanghai to Lhasa

4 What do you think the word unforgettable means?

a.easy to remember b.easy to forget c.boring d.not nice

5 This passage is about .

a.the journey from Moscow to the east of Russia **b.train journeys**
c.the trouble with travelling d the journey in Australia

C. The Reader

4 a. Match column A with column B:

	A		B
1-	Black Beauty	a.	was accused of stealing the horses' food
2-	Mr Barry	b.	suggested buying good food for Black Beauty for a few weeks.
3-	Mr Barry's frien	c.	said, "If they cannot pull a carriage, we must sell them."
4-	Flicher	d.	was a rich man who bought Black Beauty.
	1-e 2-d 3-b 4-a	e.	was taken to a market for horses

b. Answer the following questions:

1 What was the problem with the reins that Lady Smythe wanted the horses to wear?

They were very uncomfortable and it was diffcult to pull a carriage up a hill with them on.

2 How did Ginger and Black Beauty become hurt?

They fell to the ground and had to be cut from the carriage.

3 Do you think that Black Beauty was angry with Ginger because he was hurt? Why / Why not?

They fell to the ground and had to be cut from the carriage.

4 What did Filcher do with Black Beauty's food?

He took it home to give to his rabbits.

5 Why do you think that Earl Smythe said that he might not get much money for Ginger?

Because Ginger's knees were badly damaged. She also does not always do what her owners want.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The train to Damietta ………………at ten past eleven.

a. leave **b. leaves** c. leaving d. will

2 You ………………seen Omar at school yesterday. You sat next to him!

a might have b shouldn't have c might not have d must have

3 I encouraged my younger brother……………… hard.

a. to work b. work c. works d. working

4 We didn't have much money so we bought……………… class tickets.

a. frst b. express c. stopping d. economy

5 It is sad that some people become ………………to computer games.

a. upset b. successful c. addicted d. hard

6 My uncle is the……………… of a factory. He gives instructions to the workers.

a. captain b. manager c. mechanic d. secretary

6 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1 It is not possible that you saw Mona yesterday. She is in England. (can't)

You can't have seen Mona yesterday. She is in Paris.

2 "Look out, Ahmed!" Nabil said. (warned)

Nabil warned Ahmed that a car was coming.

I tried the fsh at the restaurant, but I regret it. (shouldn't)

I shouldn't have tried the fsh at the restaurant.

8 Write an email about one of the following

- You were planning to meet your friends an hour ago, but they haven't arrived. What do you think might, must or couldn't have happened?
- a situation when someone tried to persuade you to do something but you refused

unit 13 At the observatory LESSONS 1 & 2

observatory	مرصد	minus	سالب (تحت الصفر)
astronomy	علم الفلك	centigrade	درجة مئوية
astronomer	عالم فلك	wonder	يتساءل
telescope	تليسكوب	disappear	يختفى
shapes	اشكال	freezing	شديد البرودة
degree	درجة علمية	space	الفضاء
Shooting stars	الشهب	rocks	صخور
planets	كواكب	notice	يلاحظ
moons	اقمار	through	عبر – من خلال
The solar system		النظام الشمسى	

Confusing words

plant	نبات	planet	كوكب
degree	درجة علمية (حرارة)	mark	درجة امتحان
astronomer	عالم فلك	astronomy	علم الفلك

Opposites

minus	سالب	plus	موجب
appear	يظهر	disappear	يختفى
hotter	اكثر سخونة	colder	اكثر برودة
send	يرسل	recieve	يتسلم

Prepositions

In the sun	متعرض لاشعة الشمس	On the moon	على سطح القمر
At night	ليلا	Fall onto the earth	يسقط على كوكب الارض
Through space	عبر الفضاء	Around 123 degrees	حوالى ١٢٣ درجة

Expressions

Get hotter	تزداد سخونة	1000 times bigger	اكبر بالف مرة
The earth's moon	قمر الارض	The same size	نفس الحجم
Different shapes	اشكال مختلفة	Get to school	يصل للمدرسة

Language Notes

Moon قمر طبيعى satellite قمر صناعى

Some planets have no **moons**. We have an important **satellite**.

freeze يتجمد freezer مجمد (فريزر) freezing متجمد

I'll **freeze** the food they haven't eaten. We put food in the **freezer** to keep it

It's **freezing** here. Can I close the window?

Astronomer عالم فلك astrolonger منجم (ابراج) astronaut رائد فضاء



Astronomy : your questions answered

We asked you to send us your questions about the **solar system** for our team of **astronomers** here at the **observatory**. Here are the answers!

How many planets are there in our solar system ?

Yunis **asked** how many planets **there were** in our solar system. There are eight. They are all different sizes. The biggest planet is 1,000 times bigger than earth. Three of the planets are smaller than earth.

Do all the planets have moons?

Aya **asked if** all the planets **had** moons.Only two planets in the solar system don't have any moons, but one planet has 62 moons and one has 67! The earth's moon is round, but many of the other moons are different shapes and sizes.

What is a shooting star?

Jude **asked what** a shooting star **was**. Shooting stars are not stars. A shooting star is a small piece of rock that is travelling through space. As it moves, it gets hotter. It usually burns and disappears before it falls onto the earth.

Is it hot or cold on the moon?

Ziad asked if it was hot or cold on the moon. When the sun shines on the moon, it's very hot. It's around 123 degrees. The side of the moon that isn't in the sun is freezing, at around minus 153 degrees!

Classwork

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. It is hot today. It must be about forty ....

a degrees b. dots c. metres d. pots

2. Can I have a .... of cake, please ?

a. tin b. peace c. space d. piece

3. Planets are all different shapes and.........................

a sizes b. heights c. depth d. width

4. We live on ....

a. Mars b. Venus c. Earth d. Uranus

5. The earth's moon is ....

a. oval b. circle c. square d. round

6. The shooting star travels through……………………

a. seas b space c. rivers d. rock

7. The side of the moon that isn't in the sun is……………………

a, boiling b. burning c. melting d. freezing

8. A shooting star usually burns and disappears before it…………………… onto the Earth.

a. feels b. fills c falls d. fails

GRAMMAR

Reported speech الكلام غير المباشر

Reported Wh-questions

يتم تحويل السؤال الى غير مباشر كالاتى

(١) said, said to تحول الى asked , wanted to know , wondered

(٢) تحذف الاقواس و نربط بنفس كلمة الاستفهام الموجودة مع حذف do , does, did ووضع الزمن المناسب

(٣) بعد كلمة الاستفهام نقوم بترتيب الجملة (فاعل – فعل – مفعول – تكملة الجملة)

(٤) يتم تحويل الضمائر حسب المتكلم و المتكلم اليه.

1- "Where **do** **you** **spend** **your** weekend,Ali?" , said Yasser.
Yasser **asked** Ali where he spent his weekend.

2- "How much **is** **your** new dress, Hanan?" , said Sarah.
Sarah asked Hanan how much her new dress was.

3- "Why **are** **you** late?", the teacher said to me.
The teacher **asked** me why **I** **was** late.

4- Father said me "Where **did** you **go**?"
Father asked me where I had gone.

Reported Yes, no –questions

(1) said, said to تحول الى asked , wanted to know

(٢) تحذف الاقواس و نربط if , whether مع حذف do , does, did ووضع الزمن المناسب

(٣) بعد كلمة الاستفهام نقوم بترتيب الجملة (فاعل – فعل – مفعول – تكملة الجملة)

(٤) يتم تحويل الضمائر حسب المتكلم و المتكلم اليه.

"**Do** you **speak** English well, Marwa?", said Yasmine.
Yasmine **asked** Marwa **if** she **spoke** English well.
"**Can** you **repair** the window, Ahmed?", said Hany.
Hany asked Ahmed if he could repair the window.

The teacher said to me "**Is** the bag heavy?"

The teacher asked me if the bag was heavy.

"**Have** you ever **been** to Japan, Ayah?", said Alaa.

Alaa asked Ayah if she had ever been to Japan.

Rewrite تدريب

1- "Where is your telescope?" (We asked the scientist)

- We asked the scientist where his telescope was.

2-"Do you like Egypt, Tom?" said Rahma. (Rahma asked)

- Rahma asked Tom if he liked Egypt.

3- Salma said to Mona," Can you lend me some money ?" (asked)

- Salma asked Mona if she could lend her some money.



1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Abdullah asked Ali if he ………………… Marwa the night before.

a. is meeting b. will meet c. had met d. has met

2. She asked him why………………… so late.

a. he was b. was he c. are you d. you are

3. The teacher………………… me why I was tate for the first lesson.

a. reported b. said c. asked d. told

4. Roqia wanted to know where………………… my new dress.

a. did I buy b. I buy c. do I buy d. I bought

5. She wanted to know when ………………… arrive back.

a. he will b. will he c. would he d he would

6. I asked Ali………………… he ate his breakfast.

a. that b. if c. to d. not to

7. Warda asked me "How long………………… you to get to school ?"

a. it took b. it takes c. does it take d. takes

8. The teacher asked Mona how old …………………

a. she was b. is she c. was she d. are you

2. Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. Mother said to me, "Will you travel to Aswan by air?" (wondered)
2. Hania said "When is the next bus leaving ?" (asked)
3. "What does your father do, Youssef ?" (Shimaa asked)

Homework

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 - Warda asked me how long ………………… me to get to school.

a. did it take b. it took c. does it take d. if it took

2- The teacher asked me if ………………… my homework.

a. had I done b, have I done c. I had done d. I have done

3- My friend wondered ………………… I was going to spend my weekend in Alexandria.

a. that b. which c. if d. who

4- The doctor asked my sister how many children ………………….

a. she had got b. had she got c. has she got d. would she get

5- The teacher said to Ali, "Why …………………. late for the lesson?"

a. he was b. he was c. are you d. you are

6- Soha asked Asmaa …………………. she had been the day before.

c, whether b. where c. if d. that

7- The teacher asked Taha if …………………. reading.

a. he liked b. has he Liked c. does he like d. did he Like

8-Imad asked me what ………………….

a. is my name b. was my name c. my name was d. my name

9-Nawal asked me…………………. I liked tennis.

a. who b. what c. which d. whether

10-We asked the scientist where ………………….

a. his telescope is b. is his telescope c his telescope was d. was his telescope

11- I asked Nader which ………………….

o. book was his b, is his book c. were his book d. his book was

12 Eman asked her friend if she …………………. to Aswan.

a. ever been b. had ever been c been ever had d. been had ever

13- Shooting stars are burning pieces of rock that …………………. before falling onto the earth.

a. Look b. disappear c. freeze d. fill

14- Hossam is very interested in space and wants to be a/an ………………….

a. astronomer b. engineer c. pilot d. farmer

15- There are eight planets in our solar ………………….

a. observatory b. system c. telescope d. star

16- The Science Museum has a ……………………of rock from the moon.

a. fridge b. piece c. piano d. system

2-Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. "Do you have dinner before you sleep, Mahmoud ?" (Father asked)
2. The officer said, "Where did the accident happen?" (wanted to know)
3. "Do you like the Egyptian food?" the guide said to the tourist. (asked)

4- "How many planets are there?" (Yunis asked..)

5 "Is it hot or cold on the moon?" Ziad said. (if)

6- Karim said to Ali, "Haven't you seen my mobile?" (asked)

7- Haneen said to Eman. "Are you preparing for your birthday party?" (whether)

8- "Where did you spend your last weekend?" (Mazen asked me)

9- "Can you help me with my homework?" said Ola. (If)

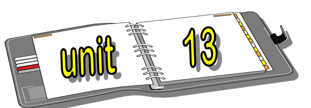
10- "Haven't you finished your project yet?" I said to my sister (hadn't)

11- Sami asked Ali. "Will you lend me your dictionary if I don't find mine?(wondered)

12- Hana asked, "When is the next bus leaving?" (wanted to know)

3-Write an email of SEVEN(7) sentences about one of the following:

1- the job you would like to do
2- an interview with an astronomer
3- Our earth
4- Astronomy



At the observatory

LESSONS 3 , 4 & 5

meteorite	نيزك	event	حدث	probably	من المحتمل
relative	قريب	bell	جرس	facts	حقائق
wonder	يتعجب- يتسأل	mostly	غالبا	symbols	رموز
decision	قرار	possibly	من الممكن	closest	الاقرب
interests	اهتمامات	metal	معدن	explain	يشرح
code	رمز	likely	من المحتمل	object	شئ
behave	يتصرف	gravity	الجاذبية	anything	اى شئ

Opposites

likes	ماتحب	dislikes	ما لا تحبه
remember	يتذكر	forget	ينسى
close	قريب	far	بعيد

Prepositions

Call out	يقول بصوت عالى	Put hand up	يرفع اليد لاعلى
Close to	قريب من	Polite to	مؤدب مع
At that time	في ذلك الوقت	Answer to	اجابة ل

Expressions

Working hours	ساعات العمل	Changing its size	تغير حجمها
Are you following me?	هل تتابعنى	I wonder if	كنت اتسأل
Feel the earth turn	يشعر ان الا رض تدور	For so long	لفترة طويلة جدا
Turn around at	تدور بسرعة	It's your turn to	جاء دورك

Language Notes

See / hear / feel + مفعول + مصدر معناها ان الشخص راى او سمع او شعر بجزء من الحدث و ليس كاملا

* He can see the boys play football .

See / hear / feel + مفعول + ing معناها ان الشخص راى او سمع او بالحدث كاملا

I could feel the earth moving.

How + الصفة + is it + to + المصدر ? ما مدى

How important is it to study hard?

Wonder يتعجب - يتسائل wander يتجول

I wonder if Egypt could win the world cup. I 'd like to wander along the beach.



Teacher : Thank you very much for that interesting talk about astronomy. Professor. Could you possibly answer some of the students' questions?

Professor : Of course. What would they like to know?

Girl 1 : Could you please explain to me why I can't feel nthe earth turn?

Professor : Yes, it is interesting that we can't feel the earth moving.The earth turns around itself at about 1,670 kilometres an hour and more than 100.000 kilometres an hour around the sun. The most important thing to remember about this is that when something is moving all time, you can't feel it, like when you are on a train. Are you following me?

Giri 1 : Yes. thank you Professor.

Girt 2 : I wonder if you could tell me what a star is made of?

Professor : A star is made of gas. And here's another interesting fact about stars. Did you know that the sun is a star? It's the only star in our solar system.

Girt 2 : I didn't know that! Thank you, Professor.

Teacher : Any more questions? Yes, Salma?

Girt 3 : I'd like to know if you like your job.

Professor : Oh, I love my job, but like many astronomers these days, most of my working hours are in front of a computer. My favourite port of the job is when I use a telescope at an observatory, because then I look at the thousands of stars.

It's a beautiful thing to see!

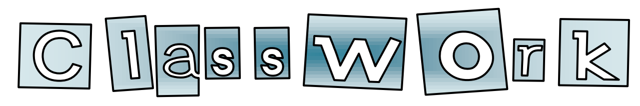
Girt 4 : Do you think that we could come and see the observatory one doy?

Professor : Yes, of course! Let me speak to your teacher and we'll see what we can do about a visit.

Reading

A scientist visited our school today and we all asked her some questions.I asked her why the sky was blue. She said that it was because we see blue light from the sun. Mona asked her what clouds were made of. The scientist said that clouds were made of tiny pieces of ice and water. Leila then asked her how cold it got in the desert. She answered that it was

sometimes 0°C or colder at night! Finally, Leila asked the scientist if we would grow vegetables in a lot more of the desert one day. She said that this was possible but that it would be very difficult. It was an interesting lesson and we all learned a lot of interesting facts!



1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- This coke is very delicious, mum. Can I have …………………piece, please?

a- other **b. others** **c. the others** **d. another**

2- …………………are moving round the sun.

Moons **b. Planets** **c. Shooting** **d Plants**

3-The sun is the biggest …………………in our solar system.

a. subject **b. object** **c. moon** **d. planet**

4- The earth turns ………………… itself once a day.

a. around **b. about** **c. through** **d. with**

5- Some stars are mode of…………………

a. gas **b. oil** **c. cotton** **d. rubber**

6- …………………if you could tell me how many solar systems we have.

a. want **b. wonder** **c. tell** **d. answer**

7- It's hot in summer because the earth is…………………to the sun.

a. busiest **b. biggest** **c. closest** **d. best**

8-All Satem's friends and teachers like him. He is clever and …………………to all people.

a. quite **b. proud** **c. polite** **d. rude**

9- …………………in an observatory spend most of their working hours in front of computers.

a. Bakers **b. Scientists** **c. Nurses** **d. Teachers**

Language functions

Asking polite questions السؤال بطريقة مهذبة

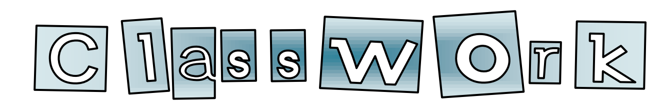
Could you please explain to me ....? ؟	.... هل من الممكن ان تشرح لي لماذا
Could you please explain to me why I can't feel the earth turn ?	
I wonder if you could tell me what	.... اتسأل ان امكن ان تخبرني
I wonder if you could tell me what a star is made of?	
I'd like to know if ....?	اريد ان اعرف اذا
I'd like to know if you like your job?	
Do you think we could ....?	هل تعتقد انه يمكننا .....؟
Do you think we could come and see the observatory one day ?	
Will/Would/Could you..., please?	هل من الممكن ان ..... من فضلك؟

Accepting a polite request الرد بالقبول

-Sure.	- Certainly,	- Yes, of course,

Refusing a polite request الرد بالرفض

- Well, I'm afraid,	- Well, the problem is	-Sorry, but.......



Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You want to know why you can't feel the earth turn. You ask your teacher,
2. You wanttoknowifyourfriend likes his job.
3. You want to know whether you could visit Rania on Friday.
4. You want your teacher to explain something you don't know.



1- Finish the following dialogue:

Ali is asking his science teacher about the sun.

Ali : Good morning, sir. Can I ask you some questions ?
Teacher : Of course. (1) ....
Ali : (2) ....?
Teacher : No, it is a star.
Ali : (3)..?
Teacher : It is made of gases.
Ali : Gases! Does it turn round ?
Teacher : No, (4) ....

2-Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You want to ask your teacher when he / she started working at the school.
2. You would like to ask your teacher to explain why it is colder in winte than in summer.
3. You want your friend to tell you what clouds are made of.
4. You ask your father to tell you how to use the internet.
5. You want to ask the train conductor when the train arrives in Alexandria.
6. A friend asked you what a planet is made of.

3- Read the following, then answer the questions:

Galileo was born in Italy in 1564. After teaching himself a lot about lens, Galileo was able to make a big telescope. This telescope made far things 20 times bigger. So Galileo was able to see the moon's surface. He found that it is not smooth, as many scientists had thought, but it is <u>rough</u>. A year later, he discovered four moons moving around Jupiter. He

then saw two rings moving around Saturn. Galileo discovered more interesting things. He was able to see some spots on the sun itself. Furthermore, he could show that Venus, Mercury, as well as the earth, turns around the sun. Galileo died in 1642, but his telescope had done a lot to astronomy.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What's Galileo's most important discovery?
2. How could Galileo see very far objects?
3. What did Galileo find out about the moon?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Galileo lived about …………………… years.
a) 70 b) 60 c) 80 d) 50
5. The underlined word 'rough' means ……………………
a) hard b) clean c) soft d) far

4-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Some……………………have more than one moon.
a. plants b. stars c. planets d. lands
2. WhenTahany went to England in January, she said that it was……………………
a. freezing b. froze c. freeze d. melting
3. At night in the desert, you can sometimes see…………………but they disappear very quickly!
a. flying stars b. shooting stars c. planets d. moons
4. On some planets, it is more than 200……………………hot.
a.marks b. points c. goals d. degrees
5. A/An……………………is a piece of rock that moves quickly through space.
a.planet b. star c. moon d. shooting star
6.Aser likes space very much and wants to be a/an ……………………
a.astronomer b. musician c. diver d. teacher
7- A/An ………………………is a building from which scientists watch space.
a.laboratory b. observatory c. factory d. library
8- A………………………star is a piece of rock that moves quickly through space.
a.flying b. growing c shooting d. sleeping
9- On some planets, it is more than 400 ………………………
a.hot b. degrees c. marks d. dots
10. Ahmed asked me what……………………doing the day before at four o'clock.
a. was I b. I am c. am I d. I was
11. Ahmed asked Sara where she ……………………her summer holiday.
a. spend b. spent c. is spending d. spends
12. Salma asked Nader if he……………………Italian.
a. speaks b. is speaking c. could speak d. speak
13.Nermeen asked where we .... the week before.
a. had met b. met c.meet d. are meeting
14- I asked Mr Hossam what………………………
a. he has done b. he had done c.has he done d. had he done
15- Mr Ali asked me when I ………………………the following day.
16- I asked Ahmed what he was doing ………………………

a.then b. now c. yesterday d. last week

5-Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. "What is the fastest way to Capital Bank ?" (I asked)
2. Mohamed said to Sara, "Will you help me with my homework ?" (if)
3. Rodina said, "Where is the post office ? (wanted ro know)
4. Haneen asked Eman, "Are you preparing for your birthday party?" (if)
5. "Where did you spend your last weekend?" (Mazen asked)
6. "Can you help me with my homework?" said Ola. (whether)
7. "Can you answer the difficult question, Nabil?"our teacher said. (Our teacher asked)
8. "Where are you going in the summer holiday?" Amal asked. (Amal asked her sister)
9. " DidAmal watch the film at the cinema yesterday?" (Bassant asked her friend.)

7 -Write a paragraph of SEVEN(7) sentences on one of the following:

1- An interview with a professor 2- The earth 3-the shooting star
4- someone you have interviewed 5- A meeting you did with an astronomer.
6- Planets in the solar system.

Unit 14 Wonders of the world — Lessons 1 & 2

marble	رخام	dome	قبة	minaret	مأذنة
monuments	أثار	original	اصلي	wonders	عجائب
ruler	حاكم	statue	تمثال	temple	معبد
ancient	قديم	Greece	اليونان	hanging	معلق
lighthouse	منارة	diary	مفكرة	fountain	نافورة
square	ميدان-مربع	earthquake	زلزال	unfortunately	لسوء الحظ
UNESCO	يونيسكو	decorate	يزين	specific	محدد
remind	يذكر	competition		damage	يتلف
protected	محمي	preserve	يحفظ	Recent events	احداث حالية

Definitions

monument	اثر	something that is built to remind people of an important event or person
marble	رخام	a very hard white, black or pink rock used for building
dome	قبة	the top of a building that is the shape of half a circle
minarets	مأذنة	a tall, thin tower
ruler	حاكم	a person like a king who can tell people what to do
Greece	اليونان	a country between Italy and Turkey

Confusing words

special	خاص (مميز)	private	ملكية خاصة
list	قائمة (اشياء)	menu	قائمة طعام
ruler	حاكم	rural	ريفى
preserve	يحفظ	reserve	يحجز

Prepositions

In + year (2018)	في عام	Put in	يوضع ف
Along the river	على امتداد النهر	Tell about	في الوقت المحدد
For this reason	لهذا السبب	Remind of	يذكر ب
Stay on the list	يبقى في القائمة	Add to	يضيف ل

Expressions

as well as	بالاضافة الى	is still standing	لا يزال قائما
half a ball	نصف كرة	collect money	يجمع مال
Over the last ten years		خلال العشر سنوات السابقة	

Language Notes

As well as بالاضافة الى

* I like fish as well as meat.

As well ايضا (تستخدم في نهاية الجملة)

* I like fish. I like meat as well.

Dairy معمل البان (منتجات البان)

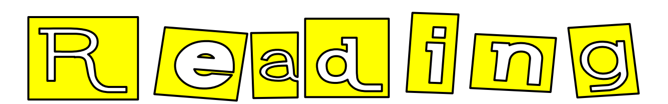
Cheese is a dairy.

Diary مفكرة

Writing a diary helps you keep momeries.

I hope + فاعل + will + مصدر

I hope you will get the full marks.



New wonders of the world

Long ago, the ancient Greeks wrote a list of seven amazing places in the world. The places they chose were **statues**, a **temple** and a **monument** in **Greece** and **Turkey**, as well as The **Hanging Gardens** of Babylon (in Iraq), the **Great Pyramid** at Giza and the **Lighthouse**

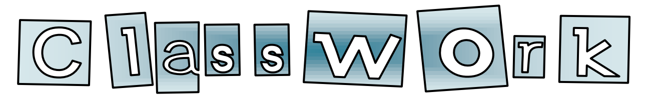
of Alexandria.

Only one of the original wonders of the ancient world is still standing: the **Great Pyramid** at Giza. Now a new list of **wonders** has been written. In 1999, people all over the world were asked to suggest seven **new places**. It took **six years** to make the decision, but now the final seven places have been chosen. The **Great Pryamid** of Giza stays on the new list as a special eighth wonder! The **Taj Mahal** in India is one of the places on the new list. It is a white **marble monument**, built in 1632 by the ruler of India to remember his wife. The monument was completed in 1648, but it took another five years to complete the fountains and gardens around it.

The Taj Mahal, with its beautiful white **dome** and four **minarets**, has been visited by millions of people since it was built. Unfortunately, it has been **damaged** by **pollution**. For this reason, the Taj Mahal has now been added to **UNESCO's** list of **protected** monuments. UNESCO helps to look after important sites, and it is hoped that it will preserve the Taj Mahal, too.

Some of the world's wonders

Wonders		Place	
The Hanging Gardens of Babylon	حدائق بابل المعلقة	In Babylon/Iraq	بابل – العراق
The Great Pyramid	الهرم الاكبر	At Giza/Egypt	الجيزة – مصر
The Lighthouse of Alexandria	منارة الاسكندرية	In Alexandria/Egypt	الاسكندرية – مصر



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- The Taj Mchal is a/an .... in India.

a. Library **b. decision** **c. monument** **d. pollution**

2- .... is a very hard white, black or pink rock used for building.

a. Marble **b. Sand** **c. Iron** **d. Soil**

3- The Great Pyramid stays on the new list as a/an .... eighth wonder.

a. special **b. private** **c. personal** **d. unreal**

4- .... our team lost the match in the last few minutes.

a Unfortunately **b. Cleverly** **c. Fortunately** **d. Happily**

5- A/An .... is a tall, thin tower.

a. farm **b, dome** **c. temple** **d. minaret**

6- .... is country between Italy and Turkey.

a Greek **b. Giza** **c. Greece** **d. Egypt**

7- The Great Pyramid at Giza is one of the .... wonders of the ancient world.

a, unimportant **b. modern** **c. shortest** **d. original**

8- The .... of Taj Mahal is made of marble.

a. ruler **b.dome** **c. pollution** **d. charity**

GRAMMAR

The present perfect المضارع التام

☏ يتكون من: have / has + P.P

يستخدم المضارع التام للتعبير عن :

حدث تم فى الماضى دون ذكر زمن حدوثه.

- I have been to Cairo.

حدث وقع فى الماضى و مازال مستمرا حتى الوقت الحاضر .

We have studied English since 2009

حدث انتهى و مازال له اثر

- She has broken his leg.

النفى فى المضارع التام: haven't / hasn't + P.P

I haven't eaten lcnch yet.

السؤال فى المضارع التام: Have / has + الفاعل + P.P

Have you finished your homework yet?

The present perfect passive المبنى للمجهول فى المضارع التام

☏ يتكون من: have / has + been + P.P

Karim has written a story.
A story has been written by Karim.

النفى: haven't / hasn't + been + P.P

She **hasn't washed** the dishes yet.
The dishes **haven't been washed** yet.

السؤال: Have / has + نائب الفاعل + been + P.P

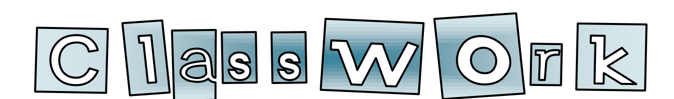
Have you read the story yet?
Has the story been read yet?

اداة استفهام + Have / has + الفاعل + been + P.P

Where have you bought the book?
Where have the book been bought?

Rewrite تدريب

1- Someone **has broken** into the house, (been)
* The house **has been broken** into.
2 The bridge **has been built** since 2006. (The government)
* The government **has built** the bridge since 2006.
3 The engineers **haven't finished** the project yet. (hasn't)
* The project **hasn't been finished** (by the engineers) yet.
4- **Has** the UNESCO **looked** after important sites? (Have)
* **Have** important sites **been looked** after by the UNESCO?
5-Why **has** the teacher **punished** the students? (been)
* Why **have** the students **been punished** by the teacher?



1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1-The Taj Mahal .... visited by millions of people since it was built.
a. is b. have been c. has been d. was

2- The students in my class .... told about the date of the exam yet.
a. hasn't been b. haven't been c. have d. didn't

3-A new list of wonders..................
a. has been written b. has written c have written d. have been written

4- Some buildings have been.................. in the earthquake.
a damage b. damaging c. damaged d. damages

5- We have been .... the present perfect in English.
a. taught b teaches c. teach d. to teach

6-What's the most expensive thing that.................. at the market this week?
a.has been bought b. have been bought c.have bought d. has bought

7- A/An .... is a person Like a king who can tell people whatto do.
a. rural b. archaeologist c. ruler d. actor

8- .... any trees been planted in the park this year?
a Were b. Have c. Has d. Are

9- How has your watch .... stolen, Ahmed?
a. be b. being c. to be d. been

2-Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1- Our school has won the competition. (The competition)
2- We have collected a lot of money for the charity, (been)
3- The building has been painted again. (They)
4- Someone has drawn a picture in my diary. (A picture)



1-Finish the following dialogue:

Sara and Sally are talking about the wonders of the world.

Sara : Hello, Sally. (1).. ?
Sally : Hi Sara. Yes, I think I'm good at history.
Sara : Can you name some wonders of the world ?
Sally : Yes, of course. (2)..
Sara : (3)... ?
Sally :The pyramids are more than 4000 years old.
Sara : And where is the Taj Mahal ?
Sally : (4)..

2-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Huda had to accept the job for many ....
a.fountains b. reasons c. wonders d. shapes

2- A ....is the top of a building that is the shape of half a ball.
a. dome b. minaret c. monument d. mosque

3. Something that is built to remind people of an important event or people is called a ....
a. souvenirs b. monument c. diary d. dome

4. The Alexandria................was one of the seven wonders of the ancient world.
a. Statue b. Hanging c. Great d. Lighthouse .

5. It took seven years to................the decision.
a. make b.give c.do d.play

6.The most amazing places in the world are called...............................
a. monuments b. walls c. towers d. wonders

7. A very hard white, black or pink material used for building is called.............................
a. paper b. metal c. marble d. iron

8- Noha........................ her research about the wonders of the world.
a. have just been finished b. has just been finished
c. has just finished d. have just finished

9- I ....been chosen for the school football team.
a. wasn't b. haven't c. am not d. didn't

10- .... caught by the police yet?
a. Is the thief b. Have the thief been c. Were the thief d. Has the thief been

11- The teacher who will teach us moths hasn't .... yet.
a. be decided b. being decided c. been decided d. to decide

12- Our school has been built ....a businessman.
a. in b. about c. on d. by

13- ....the decision been made by the manager yet?
a. Has b.Was c.Have d.Is

14. Some beautiful flowers................planted outside the school.
a. has been b. was c. have been d. have

15. The book has been................by the teacher.

a. revise b. revising c. revised d. revises

16. The floor …………….yet by Rana.

a. hasn't swept b. hasn't been swept c. swept d. has swept

17. The Taj Mahal has been…………….by pollution.

a. damaged b. damage c. damaging d. damages

18. The plane …………….

a. has landed b. have been landed c. has been landed d. have landed

19. The houses…………….been cleaned.

a. has recently b. recently has c.have recently d. recently have

3-Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1- Mohamed Salah has scored three goals, (by)
2- Ali hasn't visited the Taj Mahal yet. (hasn't been)
3- How have the police discovered the crime? (been)
4- The child has eaten so many sweets, (have)
5- Have you bought the book? (been)
6-Archaeologists have found an ancient building in the desert, (has)
7- Have they ever decorated the building? (been)
8- The temple has been visited by many tourists. (Many tourists)
9. Tamer has just painted the room. ' (has been)
10. She has done all the jobs. (been)
11. The earthquake has damaged some buildings, (have)
12. A fifteen-year-old boy has won the prize. (The prize………….)
13. Plans have been made by the teacher for the next class trip. (The teacher………….)
14. We have collected a lot of money for the charity. (A lot of money…………)

4-Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences about one of the following:

1- "The wonders of the world"
2- "The Taj Mahal"
3- how your school has changed over the past few years
4-You visited the Great Pyramid with your friends.
5-You tell your friends about Alexandria Lighthouse,

Unit 14 Wonders of the world

LESSONS 3 , 4 & 5

waterfall	شلال	vote	يصوت	totally	كليا – تماما
oasis	واحة	Man-made	من صنع الانسان	High dam	السد العالى
The sphinx	ابو الهول	point	نقطة	definitely	بالتأكيد
exactly	بالضبط	tunnel	نفق	lake	بحيرة
opinion	رأى	canyon	وادى	architect	مهندس معمارى
personal	شخصى	international	عالمى	cliff	منحدر صخرى
vet	طبيب بيطرى	View	منظر طبيعى	vitamin	فيتامين
Art gallery	معرض فنون	mix	يخلط	area	منطقة
century	قرن	tombs	مقابر	staduim	استاد
roof	سقف	misprint	خطأ مطبعى	bibliotheca	مكتبة
brochure	نشرة – كتيب	adventure	مغامرة	palace	قصر
misread	يخطئ فى قراءة	repaint	يعيد طلاء	tourism	السياحة

Confusing words

natural	طبيعى (طبيعى)	normal	طبيعى (سليم)
century	قرن (١٠٠ سنة)	decade	عقد (١٠ سنوات)
tower	برج	tour	جولة سياحية

Prepositions

In my opinion	فى رأيى	Full of	ملئ ب
Vote on	يدلى بصوته	Up to the point	الى درجة معينة
Agree with	يتفق مع	Feel about	يشعر بخصوص
Keep ...... Out	يبقى بعيدا	Walk across	يسير عبر

Expressions

Go over a cliff	يندفع من اعلى منحدر	Have a point	لديه وجهة نظر صحيحة
Man-made wonders	عجائب من صنع البشر	Give opinion	يعطى رأيا
Do a test	يؤدى اختبار	That's amazing	هذا مذهل

I totally disagree	انا ارفض تماما	It is free to	انه مجاني
That's exactly how I feel.		هذا ما اشعر به تماما	

Language Notes

Prefixes بدايات الكلمات

mis = do wrong or badly (يخطأ)

misunderstand يسئ الفهم misread يخطأ في القراءة misprint خطا مطبعي

re = do again يفعل الشئ مرة اخرى

redo يعيد فعل rewrite يعيد كتابة repaint يعيد طلاء

too ايضا في نهاية الجملة المثبتة

I like football , too.

either في نهاية الجملة المنفية

I don't like lentils , either.



Salma and Huda talking about the seven wonders of Egypt.

Salma : **What do you think of this list, Huda?** It is a list of places that should be the seven wonders of Egypt. You can vote on which ones should be on the final list of seven places. It has the Pyramids of course, but it doesn't have the Cairo Tower. I think the Cairo Tower should be on the list.

Huda : **I'm afraid I disagree**, Salma! I think that all the places on the list should be ancient wonders like Abu Simbel, or natural wonders, such as the Wadi Rayyan waterfalls.

Salma : **I totally disagree**. The Aswan High Dam is on the list, and it's modern. So why not have the Cairo Tower?

Huda : **Yes, you have a point there**. Does it have the Citadel in Cairo? That's amazing.

Salma : **I couldn't agree with you more**. It's not on the list, but it should be.

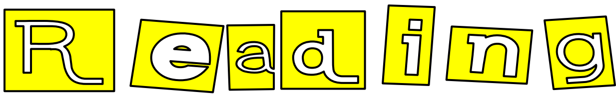
Huda : How do you feel about the Sphinx? I think that should be on the list, too.

Salma : **That's exactly how I feel**. It's very ancient.

Huda : Now the Suez Canal should definitely be one of the man-made wonders. I'm happy that the Suez Canal is on the list. Do you agree?

Salma : **I agree with you up to a point**. It is fantastic, but I prefer ancient buildings like some of the other pyramids. So, shall we vote?

Huda : Yes, good idea.



In my opinion, the **Bibliotheca Alexandrina** should be part of a list of **modern wonders** of the world. It was designed by a group of international architects who work in Norway . The library is very modern and full of light from the sun during the day. It has been called “too modern” by some people, but I totally disagree. I think it is fantastic.

Wonders of Egypt

Wonders	Place
The Wadi Rayyan waterfalls شلالات وادى الريان	Fayoum
The Siwa Oasis واحة سيوة	Siwa
The temple of Abu Simble ابو سمبل	Aswan
The Sphinx ابو الهول	Giza
The Cairo Tower برج القاهرة	Cairo
The High Dam السد العالى	Aswan
The Citadel القلعة	Cairo
Bibliotheca Alexandrina مكتبة اسكندرية	Alexandrina

Wonders of the modern world

The Great Wall السور العظيم

Place : China
What is it? : a wall that is 6,300 km long
Built : between around 200 BCE and the fourteenth century
Interesting fact : used to keep people out of the country

Petra مدينة البتراء

Place : Jordan
What is it? : an ancient city
Built : between around 300 BCE and the fifth century
Interesting fact : has 800 monuments, including palaces and towers

Chichen Itza هرم تشين اتزا

Place : Mexico
What is it? : a pyramid
Built : between around 750 and 1200 CE
Interesting fact : in the 1400s, all the people left the city around the pyramid

The Collosseum الكولوسيوم

Place : Italy
What is it? : a stadium
Built : between 72 and 80 CE
Interesting fact : 50,000 people came here to watch sports and it was free to enter



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1-Is Lake Nasser natural or is it ……………………… ?

a. modern b. traditional c. man-made d. personal

2- There is a big ………………………where the river goes over a cliff.

a. water tap b. waterfall c.water drop d. water cycle

3- You can usually find trees and birds at a/an ....in the desert.

a. art gallery b. adventure c. oasis d.object

4- Look! It says "tday's news" in the newspaper. This is a............................

a. misprint b. print c. printing d. printer

5- I agreed with my friend upto a............................

a. mark b point c. degree d. goal

6- The engineers have built ....under the Suez Canal.

a.tunnels b. oases c. waterfalls d. towers

7- The Wadi Rayyan is a/an ....wonder.

a. careful b. capital c. natural d. final

8- Landon has an exciting ....of old and new buildings.

a. mix b. text c. drop d. point

LANGUAGE FUNCTIONS

Asking for opinion طلب الرأى

What do you think of........ ?	ما رأيك في ....؟
	What do you think of the Sphinx?
How do you feel about....... ?	ما هو شعورك تجاه .... ؟
	How do you fee! about the Cairo Tower ?
Do you agree ?	هل تتفق مع ذلك؟
	Egypt has the best football team. Do you agree ?

Expressing agreement التعبير عن الموافقة فى الرأى

1. I couldn't agree with you more.	لا استطيع الاتفاق معك اكثر
2. That's (exactly) how I feel.	هذا ما اشعر به تماما
3. You have a point there.	هل تتفق مع ذلك

Expressing disagreement التعبير عن عدم الموافقة فى الرأى

1. I'm afraid I (totally) disagree.	اخشى اننى لا اوافق تماما
2.1 feel completely the opposite,	اشعر تماما عكس ذلك



Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You see a photo of a modern museum. Your friend says that he/she doesn't like it, but you like it a lot.
2. There's a new cafe in your area. You want to know what your friendthinks about it.
3. Your friend says that the test you did was very easy. You express your opinion.
4. You tell your brother/sister that the hotel you all stayed in was very nice. You want to know if he / she thinks the same.



1- Finish the following dialogue:

Yasmin asks Heba about her new pen friend.

Yasmin : I heard you've got a new pen friend. Where is she from ?
Heba : She comes from India.
Yasmin : (1) ………………………………………………………………………………………………………?
Heba : Her English is quite perfect. Her mother is British. (2)……………………………………
Yasmin : Oh! She's the same age as you. And what does she do in her free time?
Heba : ..(3)……………………………………………………………………………………………………
Yasmin : Wonderful I like computer games, too. (4) …………………………………………………?
Heba : I communicate with her through the internet.

2-Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1 - You tell your brother/sister that the hotel you all stayed in was very nice. You want to know if he/she thinks the same.
2- A friend says that he/she thinks that the last lesson was the most interesting that you have had.
3- Your friend thinks the match is boring. You disagree.
1. You think that this lesson is very interesting. You want to know what your friend thinks of it.
2. A friend says that he / she thinks that the last lesson was the most interesting that you have had. You think the same.
3. Your friend thinks that maths is very easy. You don't think the same.

3-Read the following, then answer the questions:

Adel put an envelope in his pocket and got on a bus. He met an old friend and talked to him. Now and then, when he was talking to his friend, he put his hand on his pocket to make sure that the envelope was still there. But suddenly, he felt it had gone. He looked at the faces around him, but he couldn't know who was the thief. He said to his friend," a foolish thief has stolen from my pocket an envelope which is full of photographs of my sister's wedding. I think he thought it was full of money". Adel looked down and saw his envelope under the feet of the passengers. He picked it up quickly and got off the bus the next stop to count the money. He was very happy when he found all the six hundred pounds still in the envelope.

a. Answer the following questions:

1. Why did the thief throw the envelope on the bus floor ?

2. What was inside the envelope?
3. Why was the thief foolish ?

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The thief thought that Adel had money in his pocket because …………………
a. he talked to his friend **b. he looked down**
c. he often put his hand on his pocket **d. he looked to the faces around him**

5. When Adel felt that the envelope had gone …………………
a. he was very happy **b. he got off the bus quickly**
c. he said to his friend what had happened **d. he played a trick on the thief.**

4-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This building has a floor made of…………………
a. dome **b. minaret** **c. marble** **d. monument**

2. I want to…………………my house to look beautiful.
a preserve **b. open** **c.plant** **d. decorate**

3. The teacher asked Hassan to …………………his homework because he didn't do it very well.
a reread **b. redo** **c redial** **d. repaint**

4.The Great Pyramid and the Lighthouse in Alexandria are two of the ancient…………………
a. parks **b. towers** **c. temples** **d. wonders**

5. The Cairo Tower is a…………………wonder in Egypt. It is made by Egyptian engineers.
a. natural **b. old** **c. man-made** **d. natural**

6. The UNESCO…………………important monuments all over the world.
a. looks **b. follows** **c. draws** **d. preserves**

7-A …………………is something that is built to remind people of an important event or person.
a. monument **b. ruler** **c. list** **d. prize**

8- It is a good idea to …………………any books that you are studying at school to understand them better.
a. reread **b. repaint** **c. misread** **d. reading**

9- The Taj Mahal has tall …………………
a.domes **b. minarets** **c. gardens** **d. temples**

10. All the questions …………………yet.
a. haven't been answered **b. don't answer**
c didn't answer **d. weren't answered**

11. Have the exercises …………………by Marwa ?
a. do **b. is doing** **c is done** **d. been done**

12. Siwa Oasis should be …………………the list of modern wonders of the world.
a. in **b.on** **c.at** **d.of**

13. The school…………………cleaned well.
a. have been **b. has been** **c. have** **d. has**

14. The city…………………damaged by the earthquake.
a. has already **b. already has** **c. has already been** **d. have already been**

15. A monument …………………found near Aswan.
a.have **b. has been** **c. have been** **d. were**

16- The meal hasn't …………………prepared yet.
a. be **b. being** **c. been** **d. to be**

17- Why …………………sent off during the match?

a.has been the player b. the player has been
c.has the player been d. the player has

18- …………………the report been written yet?

a.Have b. Was c.Is d. Has

5-Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. Marwa hasn't written the lessons yet. (been)
2. Prizes have been given to many students by the head teacher. (The head teacher)
3. What have they called the new baby ? (has)
4. The government has put some monuments in different squares. (Some monuments)
5. The chemist has misread the doctor's words, (been)
6. Why has the child been punished by his parents? (Why have)
7. They have planted trees along the river. (Trees ……….)
8. He read the sentence incorrectly, (….misread …..)
9. What have they called the new baby? (been…)

6-Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences about one of the following :

- a place to visit in Egypt
- one of the ancient or modern wonders of the world
- Natural and man-made wonders.
-The seven wonders on Egypt.

Or Write an email of SEVEN (7) sentences on one of the following

1- To your friend Nobil(a) about a visit to a wonder of the world

2- To your friend in London inviting him/her to visit Egypt

Unit 15 Technology Lessons 1 & 2

advertise	أثار	develpment	قبة	transfer	ينقل
nearly	تقريبا	advertisement	اصلى	technology	تكنولوجيا
Allow	يسمح	process	عملية	latest	احدث
interview	مقابلة شخصية	require	يتطلب	smartphone	هاتف ذكى
communicate	يتواصل	text	نص مكتوب	Sports team	فريق رياضى
Manual workers		عمال يدوين		company	شركة
Social media		وسائل تواصل اجتماعى		Free time	وقت فراغ
Internet users		مستخدمى الانترنت		boots	حذاء برقبة

Definitions

advertise	يعلن	tell people about something in newspapers/TV, etc.
development	تطوير	The process of becoming bigger , better , etc…..
require	يتطلب	need or ask you to do something
arrange	يرتب	Make plans for something to happen
transfer	ينقل	Move someone or something from one place to another
Social media	تواصل اجتماعى	Websites used by people to communicate

Confusing words

pay	يدفع مال	buy	يشترى
Arab	عربى	Arabic	اللغة العربية
process	عملية اجرائية	operation	عملية جراحية
nearly	تقريبا	nearby	بالقرب من
The last	الاخير	The latest	الاحدث

Prepositions

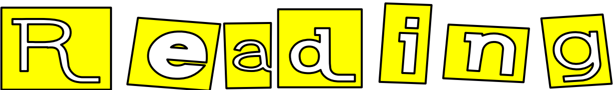
Allow to	يسمح ل	In fact	في الحقيقة
Difficult for	صعب على	Pay for	يدفع ثمن
On + media	مع وسائل الاعلام	Learn about	يتعلم عن
At the end	في نهاية	At the same time	في نفس الوقت

Expressions

Do things	يفعل اشياء	Make plans	يضع خطط
Transfer money to/from	يحول اموال الى-من	Love each other	يحب بعضنا البعض

Language Notes

ment			
develop	development	advertise	advertisement



The latest technology

Egypt was the first Arab country to use the internet and now has nearly 50 million internet users. However, technology is changing all the time, so it is important to learn about the latest developments. Many jobs now require you to know how to use social media. Some companies now use social media to advertise jobs and to arrange interviews.
In fact, if a person didn't know how to use social media, it might be more difficult for them to find work. How we send messages is also changing. In the past, you could only send emails using a computer. Now you can send texts or emails on a mobile phone or tablet. Social

networking sites allow you to send messages to many people at the same time. This is very useful if you wont to send messages to a group of people, for example to your friends in a sports team or a book club.The way that we use our mobile phones is also changing. We can use them to transfer money to or from a bank or even to pay for things in shops. If someone wanted to have the latest technology, they could buy a smartphone. The latest technology can help you to do many things. You can find out about it online or in some magazines.

CLASSWORK

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- I always read about the latest .... in technology.
a. governments b. developments c. moments d. monuments

2- In some countries, you can .... money to or from a bank,
a. translate b. require c. transfer d. develop

3-You can find jobs .... the internet.
a. in b.at c.with d.on

4- There is a/on .... in the newspaper for a new computer game.,
a. advertisement b. experiment c. equipment d. movement'

5- It's an/An........................ that all the manual workers wear boots.
a. government b. requirement c. enjoyment d, payment

6- The students have .... to see the teacher after the class.
a. developed b. arranged c. advertised d. transferred

7- It's very expensive to .... -something on television.
a. change d. communicate c. advertise d.happen

GRAMMAR

The second conditional الحالة الثانية للجمل الشرطية

تتكون من

If اذا – لو Unless ما لم – الا اذا	Past simple ماضي بسيط التصريف الثاني للفعل	would / could / might + المصدر

الاستخدام

١- تستخدم للتعبير عن مواقف اما مستحيلة او غير محتملة الحدوث

If they were taller, they 'd be good at basketball .
If I went to England, I would visit London

٢- تستخدم للتعبير عن النصيحة

If I were you , I 'd go to the doctor.

٣- تستخدم للتعبير عن المواقف الخالية

If I were a bird, I' d fly all over the world.

We can use might instead of would. Might = would perhaps:

يمكن استخدام **might** بدلا من **would** للتعبير عن عدم التاكد

If you learned Japanese, you **might get** a job in Tokyo
If you learned Japanese, you **would perhaps** get a job in Tokyo

We can use could instead of would. Could = would be able to :

يمكن استخدام **could** بدلا من **would** للتعبير عن عدم القدرة او الامكانية

If we **went** to the beach, we **could go** swimming.

In the negative, might not shows possibility, but could not shows impossibility:

في حالة النفي **might not** تدل على الامكانية و تدل **would not** على الاستحالة

If you went to the museum now, it might not be very busy .
If you visited the palace, you couldn't go in the gardens because they're closed.

لاحظ استخدام were مع I و he

Rewrite تدريب

1- I advise you to eat healthy food. (were)
- If I were you, I would eat healthy food.
2- You should stop smoking, (were)
-If I were you, I would stop smoking,
3- It would be better if Leila studied well for the exams, (were)
- If I were Leila, I would study well for.the exams. ,
4- If he succeeded , his dad would perhaps by him a bike. (might)
-If he succeeded, his dad might buy him a bike.

تستخدم **unless** بدلا من **if** في النفي ولها نفس القواعد.

5- If Ali didn't wake up early, he wouldn't catch the school bus. (Unless)
- Unless Ali waked up early, he wouldn't catch the school bus.
6- If he got up early, he would be able to catch the bus. (could)
If he got up early, he could catch the bus.

في بعض الاحيان يطلب السؤال استخدام If بدلا من because , so و لعمل ذلك
اذا كانت because نبدأ ب If و و نعكس الجمل
اذا كانت so نبد ب If و تظل الجمل كما هي
اذا كانت الجملة في المضارع نستخدم الحالة الثانية و اذا كانت الجملة في الماضي نستخدم الحالة الثالثة
تحويل اى إثبات الى نفي و النفي الى اثبات

7- He isn't a doctor so he can't help you- (If)

- If he were a doctor , he would help you.

8-If Ayman were rich, he could buy a villa, (because/so)

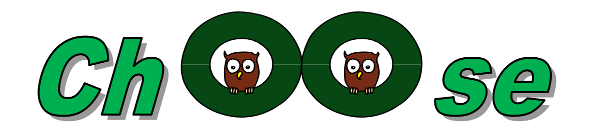
Ayman can't buy a villa because he isn't rich.

Ayman isn't rich so he can't buy a villa. ,

9- I'm poor so I can't buy a car. (If)

- If I weren't poor, I would buy a car.
- If I were rich. I would buy a car.





1- If we all ……………………. each other, the world would be a better place to live in.

a. loved b. love c. loving d. had loved

2- We ……………………. go to England if we had friends or family there.

a. were b. will c. won't d. would

3- We……………………. shopping if we had enough time.

a. will go b. would go c. went d. had gone

4- What ……………………. if you won a prize?

a. might you say b. will you say c. you would say d. you said

5- If I knew the answer to the question, I ……………………. you.

a.will tell b, tell c. won't tell d. would tell

6- If I ……………………. ill, I would go to the doctor.

a.am b. was c. have been d had been

7- If you ……………………. a smartphone, it would be easy to transfer money.

a. had b. have c, would have d. were

8- If he read really carefully, he ----------- understand the book.

a. can't b. don't c. would d. won't

9- If someone was unkind to you, ……………………. the teacher?

a.you tell b. would you tell c. can you tell d. you told

10-If you ……………………. how to speak English, it might be difficult for you to travel to London.

a. knew b. don't know c. didn't know d. had known

2-Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1-I don't have money. I can't buy a laptop. (If)

2- Sameh is short. He can't play basketball, (were)

3- Noura doesn't have a computer, so doesn't use social media sites, (might)

4- It would be better if Hany did the homework alone. (If I were)

5- If you didn't get help, you'd be in trouble. (Unless)

Homework

1- Finish the following dialogue:

Mahmoud and his father are talking about computers and smartphones.

Mahmoud : Hi father. Would you buy me a computer. Dad ?
Father : Hi Mahmoud. (1) ……………………………………………………………………………?
Mahmoud : I need it to do some work on the internet.
Father : Do you know how to use the internet ?
Mahmoud : (2) …………………………………………………………… We use computers at school.
Father : What (3) …………………………………………………………………………………?
Mahmoud : Great. I think a smartphone Is more useful than a computer.
Father :Tomorrow, (4) ………………………………………………………………………………

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In some countries, you can …………………… money to or from a bank.
a. require b. transfer c. happen d. develop

2. There is a remarkable …………………… in the field of technology.
a. arrangement b. advertisement c development d. payment

3. You can find out about what you need…………………… using the internet.
a. inline b. online c. offline d. outline

4- To …………………… is to move someone or something from one place to another.
a. transfer b. develop c. require d. advertise

5- Have you read about the latest …………………… in computers?
a. pavement b. development c. moment d. monument

6- …………………… tell people about something in newspapers, on TV, etc.
a. Developments b. Arrangements c. Advertisements d. Requirements

7. If you are making plans for something to happen, you are…………………… it.
a. transferring b.developing c. paying d. arranging

8. The internet helps us to receive…………………… very quickly.
a.letters b. paper c. social media d.messages

9. Sama would catch the bus if she ………………… up early.
a.wakes b.woke c. woken d. waking

10. If Hala ………………… German, she might talk to tourists.
a.spoke b. speaks c. will speak d. had spoken

11. If Salma ………………… the advertisement, she'd apply for the job.
a.reads b. read c. will read d. would read

12-If a person didn't know how to use social medic, it …………… more difficult for them to find work,
a. were b. be c. will be d. might be

13- His parents ………………… him if he told them about the problem.
a. could help b. helped c. will help d. didn't help

14-If Hassan ………………… older, he could learn to drive a car.
a.is b. was c. would be d. had been

15. I'd buy a car if I………………… a lot of money.
a. have b. will have c. would have d. had

16. What………………… if you had a problem ?

a. will you do b. do you do c. did you do d. would you do

3- Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1- I advise you to have a rest. (If)
2- If Hossam didn't clean his room, his mother would be angry with him. (Unless)
3- You shouldn't come to the party late. (were)
4- She isn't happy because she doesn't get high marks. (If)
5- The book is too difficult to understand. (If)
6- If he had a car, he could travel to Alex. (because)
7- I'm tired now, so I won't enjoy walking. (If)
8- If they didn't come early, they might not catch the train. (Unless)
9- Unless she wasted her time, she would finish earlier. (If)
10- I'm too busy to visit my aunt (If)
11. Without his help, I'd fail. (Unless)
12. They lose the match because they don't play well. (If)
13. Perhaps if Eyad knew the answer, he would pass the test. (might)
14. Aya doesn't play tennis well. She doesn't get a medal, (if)

4-Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences on one of the following:

1-Social media sites
2- modern technology
3- a trip you would do if you won a prize
4- Smartphones.

Unit 15 Technology

Lessons 3, 4 & 5

robber	لص	scam	مخادعة	digital	رقمي
gallery	معرض (فني)	archaologist	عالم اثار	invest	يستثمر
conclude	يختم	trick	خدعة	beauty	جمال
terrible	فظيع	addition	اضافة	contrast	تناقض
valuable	قيم	medical	طبي	instruments	اجهزة
sums	مبالغ- مسائل	software	برامج الحاسب	recognise	يتعرف على
percent	في المائة	calendar	تقويم	real	حقيقى
Seem	يبدو	Privacy settings		اعدادات الخصوصية	
Bank account		حساب في بنك		invention	اختراع

Confusing words

scam	خداع	scan	يتفحص
robber	سارق	rubber	مطاط
address	عنوان مكان	title	عنوان (مقال – فليم)

Prepositions

On business	في عمل	Put on a site	يضع على موقع
Go on	يستمر	Go away	يذهب بعيدا
In danger	في خطر	At the beginning	في نهاية
For free	مجانا	Come from	يأتي من

Expressions

Make friends	يكون صداقات	Make sure	يتأكد
What else ?	ماذا ايضا؟	Take turn	يأخذ دوره
Free of charge	مجانا	The arab world	العالم العربي
More and more	أكثر و أكثر	On the other hand	من ناحية اخرى

Language Notes

How + الصفة اسلوب تعجب

How wonderful !

So that لكى

I study hard so that I can pass my exams. مضارع (can + المصدر)

I studied hard so that I could pass my exams. ماضى (could + المصدر)

Steal يسرق شئ rob (يسرق (مكان او شخص

Someone **has stolen** my bag. Someone **robbed** me **of** my bag.

A gang **roobed** the bank yesterday.

LISTENING

Basel : I found an interesting report on the internet. Did you know that 64% of Egyptians have smartphones?

Nader : No, I didn't. What else does it say?

Basel : It also says that Egypt has the highest number of internet users in the Arab world.

Nader : Tell me more.

Basel : The report says that although this is good, you must be careful because more and more people are having problems with scams.

Nader : Really? Go on,

Basel : There is an example of a person called Khaled who made a friend on a social networking site. The person seemed friendly, so Khaled told him where he lived and what he did every day. However, the person was a robber. He was waiting to hear the right information,

Nader : Then what happened?

Basel : One day, Khaled told the person that he was going on holiday with his family. Now the robber knew his address, and he knew that nobody was going to be in the house.

Nader : What happened after that?

Basel : The robber went to Khaled's house in the night and stole many things.

Nader : That's terrible. How can people stop things like that from happening?

Basel : There is some advice in the article. It says that you must never make friends with people you don't know on the internet. If you use social networking sites, use their privacy settings.

Nader : What are privacy settings?

Basel : They make sure that only people that you know can read your messages and see information about you.



Digital projects مشروعات رقمية

Unfortunately, many of the world's ancient wonders are **in great danger**. However, a way to help **save** many of these **monuments** has been found by **Ben Kacyra**, an **engineer** who comes from **Iraq**. **CyArk** is a project that he started in **2002**. It uses special **cameras** that take **photos** of ancient **temples** and **monuments**. If anything happened o these buildings, the photos would help **archaeologists** and **engineers** to **repair** them. CyArk's projects have also been put on an **online gallery**, so that people from all over the world can see and understand the **beauty** of these , ancient buildings.

Ancient Thebes مدينة طيبة القديمة

Many tourists visit the area of ancient Thebes to see buildings such as the Ramesseum, one of the most interesting ancient temples. Special photos of the temple's floors and walls have been taken by CyArk's cameras. These will give archaeologists more information about the temple. The archaeologists would be able to use the photos if theyn needed to repair it.

CLASSWORK

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- We saw some famous paintings in the new art …………………

a. photo **b. gallery** **c.scam** **d. camera**

2- Sixty-four …………………of Egyptians have smartphones.

a.percent **b. present** **c. prizes** **d.persons**

3- A/An …………………went into the house in the night and took a new television.

a. sailor b. policeman c. robber d. engineer

4- You should never …………………friends with people you don't know on the internet.

a. make b. do. c. invest d. rob

5- My uncle usually travels to the USA ………………… business.

a. on b. at c. to d. of

6- Ramy's bike is broken. How can we …………………it?

a.continue b. practise c. repair d. invest

7- he Sphinx is a famous …………………

a.temple b. gallery c. monument d. scam

8- The privacy …………………on social networking sites make sure that only people who you know con see information about you.

a.scams b.sizes c. sites d settings

9- Smartphones can take …………………photos.

a. dangerous b. digital c chemical d. social

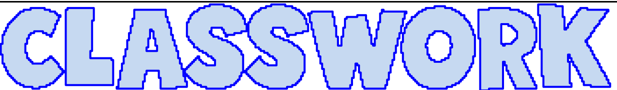
10-More and more people are …………………problems with scams.

a having b. taking c giving c. doing

Language Function

Encouraging people to continue speaking تشجيع الناس على الاستمرار فى الحديث

Great! What else does it say ?	عظيم ! ماذا تقول ايضا ؟
Really ? Go on.	حقا ؟ استمر
How wonderful! Tell me more.	شئ رائع! اخبرنى المزيد
Then what happened ?	ثم ماذا حدث؟
What happened after that ?	ماذا حدث بعد ذلك ؟



Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. A friend tells you that his/her brother is studying computer programming. Ask for more information.
2. A friend starts to read you a new story. You want to hear more.
3- A friend starts reading a nice poem. Encourage him.
4. Your friend reads only the first sentence of a long text message,then stops reading.
5. Your mother told you a part of a story and stopped. You want her to complete it.

Homework

1- Finish the following dialogue:

"Hady and Shrief are talking about a report on internet scams."

Hady : I have read a report on internet scams.
Shrief : (1) ....
Hady : It said that many internet users get internet scams.
Shrief : (2)..?
Hady Because they open the e-mails they get from strangers.
Shrief : So, should we stop using the internet?
Hady : (3) ....
Shrief : What should we do to protect ourselves from strangers?
Hady : (4) ....
Shrief : That's right. We shouldn't say information about our lives to people we don't know

2-Write what you would say in each of the following situations: •

1. A friend tells you that his /her brother met a famous basketball player. You want to know more.
1. You ask your father to tell you more facts about the Great Pyramid in Giza.
3. Your friend reads the first sentence of a long text message. You want to hear more.
4. Amal is talking about her trip to Wadi Rayyan. You want to know more.
5. Abeer tells you about scams on the internet. Encourage her to continue.
6. You give your opinion of CyArk project.
7- A friend starts to read you an interesting story, but he suddenly stops.

3-Read the following, then answer the questions:

A tourist has been found after spending five days in the desert. He went for a walk and must have got lost. He was **delighted** when a farmer found him. The farmer gave him water and told him that he should have taken a phone and lots of water into the desert. Then the farmer took him to a hospital. When he got **there**, a doctor advised him to sleep and drink lots of water, but said that he was not hurt. We interviewed the tourist when he got home. He asked us to thank the farmer and the doctor. He said that if he went to the desert again, he would be much more careful.

a. Answer the following questions:

1. What happened to the tourist when he went for a walk ?
2. What did the doctor say that the tourist should do ?
3. Why do you think that the farmer said that he should have taken a phone ?

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. What do you think the word delighted means ?

a. very sad **b. very thirsty** **c. very happy** **d. very ill**

5. What does the underlined word there refer to ?

a. the desert **b. the farm** **c. the hospital** **d. the man's home**

4-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. This email asks for my computer password. It might be a ....

a. score **b. skin** **c. scam** **d. scan**

2. The shop is................ a job for a new assistant. Perhaps Manal can work, there.

a. investing **b. writing** **c. arranging** **d. advertising**

3. When we went on holiday, the hotel was…………………it had everything we needed.

a. personal **b. perfect** **c. boring** **d. terrible**

4. You can use your smartphone to…………………money from one bank to the other.

a. spend **b. stick** **c. arrange** **d. transfer**

5. You must…………………for the things you buy.

a. play **b. pay** **c. blame** **d. advertise**

6. You should never…………………friends with people you don't know on the internet.

a. say **b. do** **c. make** **d.clean**

7- Social media are websites used by people to …………………

a. communicate **b. change** **c, allow** **d. arrange**

8- Many of the world's ancient wonders are in great …………………

a. technology **b. example** **c. setting** **d. danger**

9. If you visited the palace today, it ……………. very busy.

a. is **b. might have** **c. might be** **d. would have**

10. If we went to the beach, we…………………swimming,

a. will go **b. can go** **c, could go** **d. won't go**

11. If I…………………you, I'd see a doctor at once.

a. am **b. was** **c. were** **d. had**

12. Who…………………you phone if you saw an accident?

a. may **b. should** **c.can** **d. would**

13. If Ahmed used the internet, he…………………like it. I don't know.

a. might **b. would** **c. should** **d. will**

14. If Zina …………………well in her exams, her mum would buy her a present.

a. do **b. done** **c. did** **d. does**

15- If Hala …………………German, she might talk to the German tourists.

a speak **b.spoke** **c. will speak** **d. had spoken**

16- Where…………………if you won g trip to anywhere in the world?

a. you would go **b. would you go** **c will you go** **d. you will go**

5-Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. He can't play basketball because he isn't tall. (If)
2. You should see a doctor. (If)
3. Omar doesn't study for the exam, so he fails. (If)

4- Unless she invited me to the party, I wouldn't go to it. (If)

5- I advise you to be careful of new internet friends, (were)

6- Susan is so young, so she won't Join primary school this year. (If)

7. If Mona were younger, she would be able to join the basketball team. (could)
8. I'm too poor to buy that book. (If)

6-Write an email of SEVEN (7) sentences about one of the following:

1- social networking sites 2- the latest technology

3- How to use the internet safely. 4-The importance of technology,

Or Write on email of SEVEN (7) sentences on one of the following:

1- To your friend Adel about social medic.2- To your cousin about smartphones.

Your name is Nader.



Buying things

Today, only about ten percent of Egyptians keep their money in a bank. Most people buy things using cash. The people who buy the most things are aged 18 to 24 and they spend the most money on electronics, air tickets, going out and clothes.Some businesses in Egypt use the internet to sell things. Egypt is the 12th best place in the world for companies to invest in online businesses. Peoplewill probably buy many more things online in the future .Egypt has the highest number of internet users in the Arab world. What people buy online will probably increase by 300 percent in the next few years. That is because more and more people have smartphones, and because the government continues to invest in technology

Listening

Basel : My class visited the famous mosque of al-Hakim in Cairo yesterday, but I didn't go.
Adel : Why didn't you go?
Basel : Unfortunately, I wasn't feeling well. I still feel a bit ill today.
Adel : What a pity. Have you been seen by a doctor yet?
Basel : Not yet.
Adel : Well, don't worry. I'm sure you'll be fine soon. I wonder if you could help me with this?
Basel : What is it?
Adel : I found this map of an island. The island doesn't have a name, but here it says that it hasn't been visited for many years. It must be a forgotten island.
Basel : The island doesn't have a name? That's funny.
Adel : There are a few big monuments on it, but no one knows what they are. They're made of marble.
Basel : Tell me more.
Adel : Well, I think it's a very old map. Do you agree?
Basel : Let me see it. Mmmm. I'm afraid I disagree. If the map was old. the paper would Look old. It looks new. I don't think that this is a map of a real island.
Adel : I disagree. It says on the map that the island has been visited by tourists in the past.
Basel : So where is this mystery island? Can I look at the map again? Mmmmmm.
Adel : What is it? Why are you laughing?
Basel : It says here that this is for children aged eight years and older.
Adel : I don't understand.
Basel : The map is from a game. The players have to use the map to find the answer to a mystery!
Adel : What a pity that I didn't read that!
Basel : Well now you know the answer to your mystery!

Practice Test 5a

1-Finish the following dialogue:

Some students are asking a scientist about space.

Noha : (1).. **Do you think you could tell me how fast the earth turns**

Scientist : Yes, of course. The earth turns at about 1,670 kilometres an hour .

Ola : ....(2) **Do all planets have moons?**

Scientist : No, but most of them do.

Noha : What did you ask the scientist, Ola?

Ola : (3) **I asked the scientist if all planets had moons.**

Maya : There are many things that nobody knows about space. Do you agree؟

Scientist : Yes. (4)**I couldn't agree with you more** . However, we are trying to learn more!

2-Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1-You would like to ask a teacher when he / she started working at the school.

I wonder if you could tell me when you started working at the school.

2-A friend says that he / she thinks that the last lesson was the most interesting that you have had. You think the same.

I couldn't agree with you more. / I'm afraid I disagree.

3-A friend starts to read you a news story. You want to hear more.

Go on./What else does it say?

3- Read the following, then answer the questions:

Mars has been studied for hundreds of years. Astronomers say that it is the planet which is most like the earth. A day on Mars is nearly the same as it is on earth. It lasts for 24 hours and 39 minutes. However, a year lasts for one year and 320 days. If you looked at Mars through a telescope, you might see a very big mountain. It is more than 20 kilometres high. That is three times as big as Everest! Scientists say that if you went to Mars, you might fnd water under the surface. However, living on Mars would not be easy. In summer, the temperature is usually minus 5°C and in winter it can be minus 82°C!

1-What is the main idea of this passage? **It gives information about the planet Mars**.

2-What do scientists think might be on the planet Mars that people could use?

They think that there might be water.

3-Can you think of three reasons why it would not be possible to live on Mars?

It is very cold in winter and very hot in summer. There might not be any water. There is probably no air to breathe.

4-What does the underlined word it refer to؟

a. Mars **b.a day on Mars** **c.a year on earth** **d.a year on Mars**

5-What do you think that the word surface means ؟

a.the sea **b.the clouds** **c.the top of the ground** **d.the biggest rivers**

C The Reader

4 a. Match column A with column B:

A		B	
1-	Jerry Barker	a.	always helped to look after Black Beauty and worked hard
2-	Captain	b.	was the best owner and a kind taxi driver
3-	Jerry's son	c.	was the horse that went out with the taxi carriage in the morning
4-	Black Beauty	d.	examined Black Beauty carefully
	1-b 2-c 3-a 4-e	e.	was pleased with his new owner

b. Answer the following questions:

1-What did Black Beauty fnd diffcult about his frst few days in London?

-There was a lot of noise and a lot of people and it was diffcult for him to fnd his way between the carriages

2-Why did Black Beauty think that Jerry was the best owner he had had?

-Because he gave Black Beauty good food and fresh water, he was kind to him and he was a good driver.

3-Why did Black Beauty feel sorry for some of the taxi drivers and their horses ؟

- Because they had to work for very long hours to get enough money.

4-Why do you think that each of Ginger's owners paid less money for her؟

- Because she was becoming weaker and weaker, so she could not work very well.

5 Do you think that people were always happy to have Jerry as a taxi driver? Why? / Why not?

He was probably not popular with everyone, because he did not always do what people asked him to do.

5-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1-Ola asked me …………………… all the people in my family were tall.

a.that b. what c.if d. weather

2- I've cleaned the kitchen, but the bedrooms …………………… cleaned yet.

a.haven't been b. not been c.have been d. wasn't

3- If we went to the beach, we…………………… swimming.

a. will go b. have gone c. could go d.won't go

4-The teacher wanted us to …………………… how the earth goes around the sun.

a. explain b.advise c.regret d.control

5-When we went on holiday, the hotel was …………………… : it had everything we needed.

a. personal b. perfect c.boring d. terrible

6- The shop is …………………… for a new assistant. Perhaps Manal can work there.

a. investing b.writing c.arranging d.advertising

6-Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1-" You must stop smoking!" the doctor said to Hatem. (ordered)

The doctor advised Hatem to stop smoking.

2-" What is the fastest way to Capital Bank?" (I asked)

I asked what the fastest way was to Capital Bank.

3- I liked the book a lot, so I decided to read it again. (reread)

I liked the book a lot, so I decided to reread it

7-Write an email to a friend who wants to know about one of the following:

- social networking sites
- how your school has changed over the past few years

Practice Test 5b

1-Finish the following dialogue:

A basketball player is visiting a school.

Teacher : Today, a famous basketball player is visiting our school. This is Mr Tarek .
..(1).. Could you answer some of the students' questions?
Mr Tarek : Of course. What questions would the students like to ask?
Ali : My friends say that I will never be good at basketball because I'm not very tall. Is that right?
Mr Tarek : (2) I' m afraid I disagree . You don't have to be tall. When I started playing, I was one of the smallest boys in the class!
Basel : (3) Then what happened/What happened after that ?
Mr Tarek : I became the best basketball player in the class because I always trained hard.
Basel :Do you think one day I might be as good as you?
Mr. Tarek : (4) You might be

2-Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1- You would like to ask a teacher to explain why it is colder in the winter than in the summer.
Could you please explain to me why it is colder in the winter than in the summer?
2- You think that this lesson is very interesting. You want to know what your friend thinks of it. What do you think of this lesson?/How do you feel about this lesson?
3-A friend tells you that he / she had an interesting morning. First, he / she went to the park. You want to know more Tell me more.

3- Read the following, then answer the questions:

A tourist has been found after spending fve days in the desert. He went for a walk and must have got lost. He was delighted when a farmer found him .The farmer gave him water and told him that he should have taken a phone and lots of water into the desert. Then the farmer took him to a hospital. When he got there, a doctor advised him to sleep and drink lots of water, but said that he was not hurt . We interviewed the tourist when he got home. He asked us to thank the farmer and the doctors. He said that if he went to the desert again, he would be much more careful.

1-What happened to the tourist when he went for a walk? He must have got lost
2-Why do you think that the farmer said that he should have taken a phone?
He should have taken a phone because then he could call someone if he had problems.
3-What did the doctor say that the tourist should do?
The doctor advised him to sleep and drink lots of water.

4-What do you think the word delighted means?

a. very sad b.very thirsty c.very happy d.very ill

5-What does the underlined word there refer to?

a. the desert b.the farm c.the hospital d.the man's home

C. The Reader

4 a. Match column A with column B:

	A		B
1-	Polly	a.	believed that a pound wouldn't help if it made the horse tired
2-	Ginger	b.	was given food before walking for many kilometres.
3-	Jerry	c.	was Jerry's wife.
4-	Black Beauty	d.	wasn't able to run very fast after the fall
	1-c 2-d 3-a 4-b	e.	was Jerry's son

b. Answer the following questions:

1-How did Jerry describe Black Beauty to his daughter?

He said that he was as gentle as she was

2-Why did Black Beauty stop fnding it diffcult to pull a taxi in London?

because he began to trust Jerry.

3-Why do you think that Jerry took Captain to work on Black Beauty's frst morning in London? I think he did not want Black Beauty to have a diffcult frst day.

4- Why did Ginger stop kicking people who weren't good to her?

because she was not strong enough to kick any more.

5- How do we know that Jerry was a kind man?

We know that Jerry is kind because he took the woman to hospital when he saw that she needed help

5-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1-Ahmed asked me what.....................doing yesterday at four o'clock.

a. was I b. I was c. am I d. I am

2-Some beautiful fowers .... planted outside the school.

a been b was c have been d have

3-If you visit the palace today, it ....very busy.

a is b might have c would be d might be

4- This email asks for my computer password. It might be a ....

a score b skin c scam d scan

5- My brother went to a good university and had a great ....

a entertainment b population c education d invitation

6- It is hot today. It must be about forty.

a degrees b dots c metres d hot

6-Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1- Perhaps if I exercise every day, I will lose weight. (might)

If I exercise everyday, I might lose weight.

2-What's the name of the biggest city in England? (like to know)

I'd like to know the name of the biggest city in England.

3-They didn't like the colour of the house, so they decided to paint it again with a different colour. (repaint)

They didn't like the colour of the house, so they decided to repaint it with a different colour.

7-Write a paragraph of seven (7) sentences about one of the following:

- someone you have interviewed
- one of the ancient or modern wonders of the world

unit 16 Animal stories Lessons 1 & 2

golden	ذهبي	grasshopper	الجراد النطاط
content	قانع	greedy	طماع
wise	حكيم	enough	كافي
goose	اوزة	moral	مغزى القصة
foolish	احمق	Greek	يوناني
respond	يستجيب	kill	يقتل
necessary	ضروري	scared	مرعوب
Family party	حفلة عائلية	ending	نهاية
upset	منزعج	invitation	دعوة
explain	يشرح	Water bird	طائر مائي

Definitions

moral	درس مستفاد	A message that gives advice.
enough	كاف	As much as necessary.
wise	حكيم	Able to give good advice.
content	راضى	Happy.
golden	ذهبى	Made of gold.
greedy	طماع	Wanting more money , food etc than you need.
goose	اوزة	A common white water bird.

Confusing words

site	موقع	sight	البصر
message	رسالة	massage	مساج
ant	نملة	aunt	عمة – خالة

Opposites

wise	حكيم	foolish	أحمق
heavy	ثقيل	light	خفيف
huge	ضخم	tiny	ضئيل

Prepositions

Prepare for	يستعد ل	Plan for	يخطط ل
Pick up	يلتقط	Think about	يفكر فى

Expressions

Look content	يبدو راضيا	Get dressed	يرتدى ملابسه كاملة
Feel content	يشعر بالرضا	Give advice	ينصح
A story with a moral	قصة ذات مغزى	Ask for advice	يطلب النصيحة

Language Notes

all (كل) يأتى بعدها اسم جمع every (كل) يأتى بعدها اسم مفرد

The farmer sold **all** the golden **eggs**. **Every** child needs love.

Lay- laid-laid تبيض lie-lied يكذب lie - lay-lain يرقد

The hen **laid** a golden egg. Ahmed never **lies**. He **lay** under a tree



The Ant and the Grasshopper

It was summer and **Ant** was collecting food for the winter. **Grasshopper'"** looked very **content** as he sat in the sun. **Grasshopper** hadn't done any work all week. "Don't be **foolish**," said **Ant**. "You know that it's hard to find food in **winter**. What could you do if you didn't have any **food** ?" "It's still **summer**!" said **Grasshopper**. "I refuse to think about winter yet!" When the winter came. **Ant** had found enough food to eat until spring. Grasshopper remembered Ant's wise words, but he was very hungry,

The Goose and the Golden Egg

One day, a farmer found that his goose had laid a yellow egg. When he picked it up, it was as heavy as metal and he thought it was bad. He decided to take it home, and he soon found out that the egg was made of gold! Every morning, the same thing happened. The farmer soon became very rich. He sold all the golden eggs at the market. However, the farmer soon became greedy He thought that there must be a lot of golden"" eggs inside the goose, so he killed it. When he had killed the goose, he found that there were no eggs inside it.

Classwork

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or a:

1- We were happy when our team won the ………………… cup.

a. cotton b. wooden c. woolen d. golden

2- ………………… means wonting more money, food, etc, than you need.

a. Grey b. Great c. Greedy d. Greek

3- It is a good idea to ask a ………………… person for advice.

a. foolish b. wise c. mad d. bad

4- If you have ………………… water, you are not thirsty.

a. black b. white c. enough d. no

5- I saw a beautiful white ………………… near the lake.

a. computer b. nose c. machine d. goose

6- Don't be ………………… It is raining heavily and you can't go out now.

a. wise b. foolish c. old d. clever

7- If you feel ………………… you are happy.

a. content b. disappointed c.upset d. sad

8- When he saw a pen on the floor, he picked it…………………

a. out b. up c. off d. at

GRAMMAR

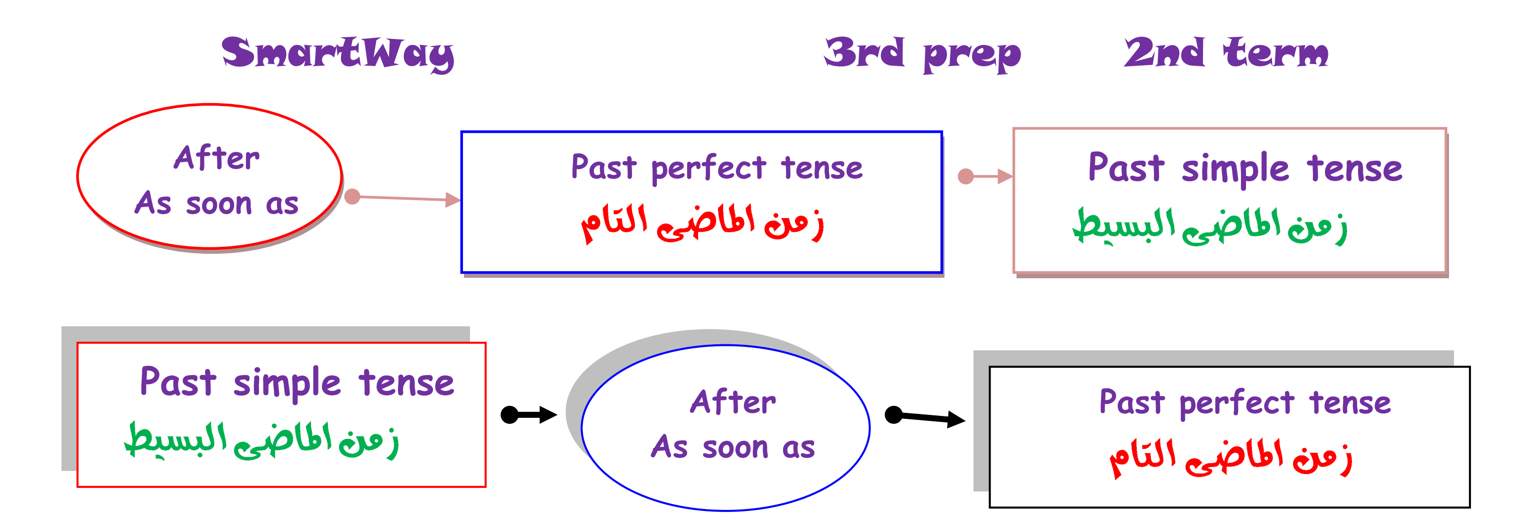
The past perfect tense زمن الماضى التام

يتكون من had (not)+ P.P

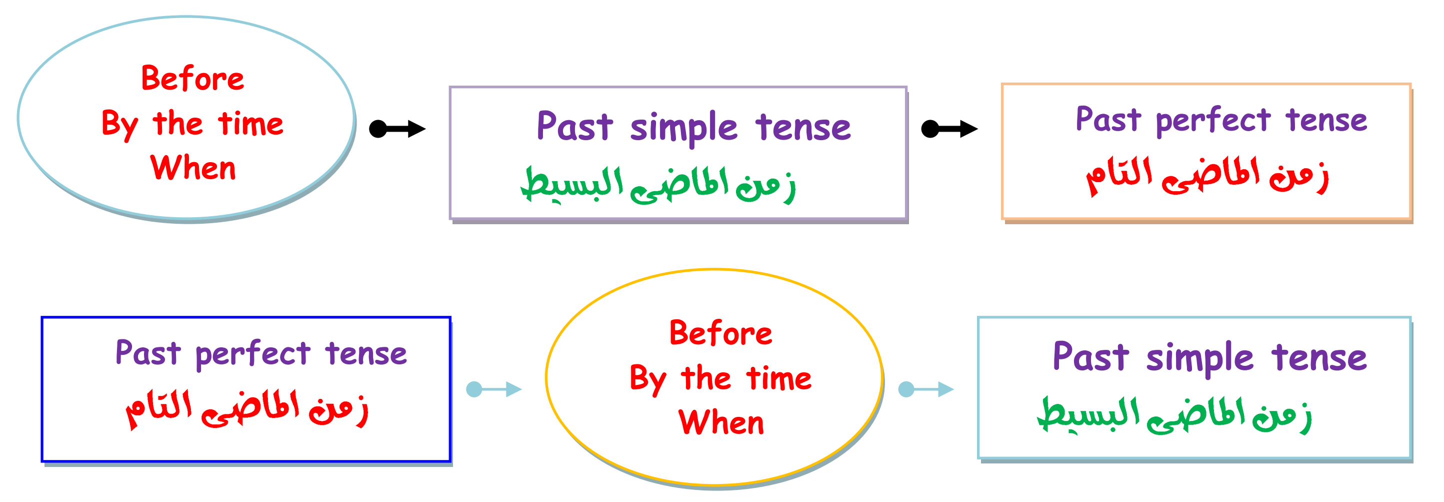
★ يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث فى الماضى تم قبل حدث اخر

★ يستخدم عادة مع الكلمات الاتية

after	بعد	before	قبل
as soon as	بمجرد ان	by the time	قبل
until / till	حتى	when	عندما



* After he had finished his work, he went home.
*He had breakfast as soon as he had washed his face.
* Ali watched TV, after he had done his homework.



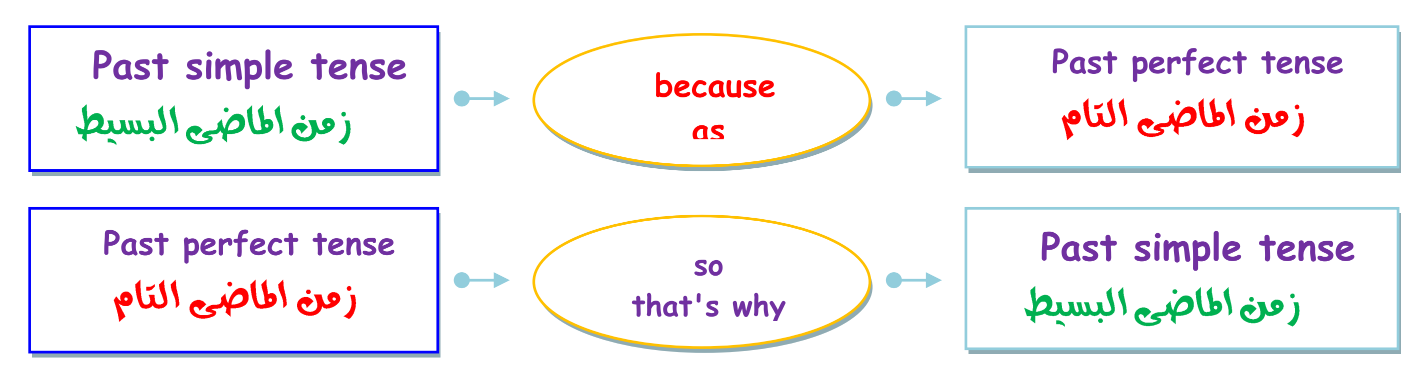
* Before he arrived, his uncle had left the house.
* He had visited his friend by the time he wrote the letter.
* When he arrived at the station, the train had left.

ملحوظة اذا لم يأت فاعل بعد after او before نضع بعدهما V.ing
After reading the letter, he felt happy.
Before buying a car, she had learnt how to drive.

By قبل – بحلول / before قبل + (وقت محدد فى الماضى) (2008 / my last birthday) + ماضى تام
By 2006, I had built this house.
Before my last visit to Cairo , I had bought new clothes.



* I didn't play football until I had finished my homework.
* The car wasn't sold till he had repaired it.



* I was very tired because / as I had worked hard.
* They had trained hard that's why / so they won the cup.

Rewrite تدريب

1- Nadia had cooked the food **by the time** her visitors arrived. (After)

- After Nadia had cooked the food, her visitors arrived.

2- As soon as she had cleaned the flat, she listened to the radio. (Before)

- Before she listened to the radio, she had cleaned the flat.

3- After Salma had studied her lessons, she went out. (until)

- Salma didn't go out until she had studied her lessons.

4- Omar didn't go out , until he had finished his homework. (after)

Omar went out after he had finished his homework.

عند استخدام first ومعناها أولا وكلمة then ومعناها بعد ذلك في الجملة المراد حلها.

♥ نضع الحدث الأول (الجملة بعد first في زمن الماضى التام) مع حذف first

♥♥ والحدث الثانى (الجملة بعد then في زمن الماضى البسيط) مع حذف then

♥♥♥ ثم استخدم الأداة المرادة مع مراعاة قاعدة هذه الآداة كما في الجدول السابق.

5- The train left ,then Ayman arrived at the station. (By the time)

By the time Ayman arrived at the station, the train had left.

6- First I watched the film, then I went to bed. (After)

- After I had watched the film, I went to bed.

- After watching the film, I went to bed.

7- Before going to school, Adel had had breakfast. (After)

- After Adel had had breakfast, he went to school.

Classwork

1-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. By the time I arrived at the party/ the singer ………………… singing.

a. begins b. had begun c. will begin d. begun

2. When my brother………………… the telephone, it had stopped ringing.

a. reached b. have reached c. had reached d. reaches

3. He did not eat………………… he had washed his hands well.

a. after b. while c. when d, until

4. After mother had been to the market, she ………………… our lunch.

a. had cooked b. cooked c. cooks d. has cooked

5. By the time I ………………… ten years old, I had learned to ride a bike.

a. am b. were c. was d. had been

6. Before………………… the exam, students had studied.

a. had done b. have done c. would do d. doing

7. They did not buy the new car because they………………… all the money.

a. lost b. have lost c. were losing d. had lost

8. After………………… the experiment, he got the right results.

a. had done b. doing c. did d. does

9. She called the police………………… she had seen the thief.

a. by the time b. as soon as c. before d. so

10. It's 10 o'clock now, by 7 o'clock this morning, I………………… dressed.

a. have got b. get c. had got d. to get

2. Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. After Hala had bought a pair of shoes, she went back home. (before)
2. First, I booked a ticket. Then, I prepared my bags. (After)
3. When the man arrived at the station, the train had left. (by the time)
4. The boy saw his father. He ran away. (as soon as)
5. He was happy. His father gave him some sweets, (because)
6. After chasing the thief, the police arrested him. (had)
7. Before he played the game, he had trained hard. (until)



3- Read the following, then answer the questions:

Ants are busy animals. They have six legs. Ants are small, but strong! Ants are amazing! An ant can carry things that weigh 30 times as much as its own body. There are different kinds of ants like carpenter ants and sweet ants. They are of different colours, too; red, brown or black. Ants live in nests under the ground or the rocks. There are three classes of ants, namely queens, males and workers. The queen lays eggs and the workers work for them. Inside these nests, ants build tunnels which connect to different rooms which are used for specific purposes like storing food, nursing places and resting rooms. The ant has a very tiring routine each day. Ants have to travel a long distance to search for food. When they find food, they have to carry it back the same distance.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What is the amazing thing about ants?
2. What does the underlined word "kinds" refer to?
3. Name the classes of ants.

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The passage mentioned ………………… kinds of ants.

a. four **b. six** **c. three** **d. two**

5. Ants travel long distance to find their…………………

a. routine **b. rest** **c. nest** **d. food**

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You should ask a ………………. man for advice.

a. greedy **b. bad** **c. foolish** **d. wise**

2. Always ………………. for your exams.

a. read **b. write** **c. prepare** **d. count**

3. What's the………………. of "Black Beauty" ?

a. moral **b. mean** **c. test** **d. title**

4. My sister likes wearing things made of……………….

a. gold **b. golden** **c. wood** **d. wooden**

5- It was summer and Ant was ………………. food for the winter.

a. eating **b. sweeping** **c. coming** **d. collecting**

6- Robbers ore very ………………. people. They always want to steal more money.

a. kind **b. greedy** **c. lovely** **d. good**

7-A story with a ………………. has a message.

a. morning **b. moon** **c. moment** **d. moral**

8- One day, a farmer found that his goose had ………………. a yellow egg.

a. lied **b. bought** **c. laid** **d, sold**

9.We couldn't go to the concert because we………………. tickets.

a. hadn't booked **b. had been booked** **c. had booked** **d. booked**

10. Ali had already………………. so he didn't go to the cafe.

a. ate **b. eating** **c. eaten** **d.eats**

11. After………………. their lessons, the children went to bed.

a. studying b. studied c. had studied d. studies

12. Everyone should plan………………. their future.

a. to b. on c. at d. for

13. ………………. he visited them before he flew to Rome?

a.Had b. Has c. Did d.Was

14. The film had started………………. we arrived at the cinema.

a. after b. until c. as soon as d.before

15- Before Sara cleaned her room, she ………………. her mother.

a. has helped b. helps c. helping d. had helped

16- It's 10 o'clock now. By 7 o'clock, I………………. got dressed.

a have b. had c. has d.did

17- He had had dinner………………. he went to bed.

a after b. as soon as c. before d. until

18- As soon as he had read the story, he ………………. it to me.

a. gave b. gives c. has given d. had given

19-The lesson ………………. when he arrived in the classroom.

a. has already started b. had already started
c. have already started d. is already started

20- As soon as we ………………. the meal, my sister washed the dishes.

a. had finished b. finished c. finish d. finishing

21- After we ………………. the museum, we decided to have lunch.

a. visit b. have visited c. visiting d. had visited

22- They had reached their school ………………. seven o'clock.

a. in b. on c. by d. of

23- I had opened the door before the telephone ……………….

a. had rung b. rang c. rings d. ringing

24- ………………. starting the lesson, the teacher had prepared some questions.

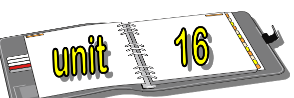
a. After b. Before c. As soon as d. Until

3-Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. Before lunch, Hala had visited her friend. (After)
2. Heba was happy. She succeeded last week. (because)
3. First, Maher wrote the letter. Then, he posted it. (Before)
4. Before the doctor arrived, the man had died. (After)
5. We played tennis. Then, we had some drinks, (by the time)
6. My father travelled to Sohag. He bought a ticket first. (As soon as)
7. As soon as Hudo had bought fish, she cooked a nice meal. (By the time)
8. After Mai had had her maths lesson, she went upstairs, (before)
9. We arrived at school. Then it became 8 o'clock. (By….)
10. First he finished his meal, then he telephoned his father. (After)
11. When I had written the letter, I posted it. (before)
12. I brushed my teeth, but first I ate my lunch. (After)
13. The guests left the house after enjoying themselves, (before)
14. After seeing the new film, she went for a walk. (After she)

4- Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences about one of the following:

1- a story with a moral
2-ants and bees
3- We should plan for the future.
4- Greedy people



Animal stories

LESSONS 3 , 4 & 5

contents	محتويات	equipment	معدات
Believe	يؤمن – يصدق	borrow	يستعير
soldier	جندى	snake	ثعبان
stick	عصا	Oh dear	يا الهى
owner	مالك	A bit	قليلا
rubbish	قمامة	discover	يكتشف
results	نتائج	guess	يخمن
escape	يهرب	antarctica	القطب الجنوبى
storm	عاصفة	necklace	عقد
stress	تشديد	syllable	مقطع فى كلمة

Confusing words

snack	وجبة خفيفة	snake	ثعبان
bin	سلة قمامة	pin	دبوس
watch	ساعة يد	clock	ساعة حائط

Prepositions

Happy for	سعيد بخصوص	Surprised by	مندهش ب
Make up	يؤلف	For nothing	بلا مقابل
In pairs	فى ثنائيات	Respond to	يستجيب ل

Expressions

See a doctor	يذهب للطبيب	Go for a ride	يذهب فى جولة
As well as	بشكل جيد مثل	Have a baby	يرزق بطفل
Make a discovery	يكتشف	Go faster	تزداد سرعة



Listen to Amir talking about a visit to a zoo.

Boy 1 : Hello Amir! I haven't seen you for a long time!
Amir : No, I've been away on holiday. I've only just come back.
Boy 1 : How was the trip?
Amir : It was great. But it didn't start very well!
Boy 1 Why? What happened?
Amir : Well, on our first day, we decided to go to the zoo, but we found out that it had closed an hour before we got there.
Boy 1 : Oh no!
Amir : Yes, a snake had escaped and nobody knew where it was.
Boy 1 : How terrible!
Amir : Then, when we were leaving the zoo car park, we saw the snake!
Boy 1 : Really? I can't believe iti
Amir : It looked at us and moved very slowly past our car. I had never seen a snake so close before!
Boy 1 : How wonderful!
Amir : But then a lot of men from the zoo arrived with sticks.
Boyl : Oh dear!
Amir :They didn't hurt the snake and soon they took it back inside the zoo.
Boy 1 :l'm very happy to hear that!



Captain Scott was a famous English soldier. He loved adventure and wanted to go to the middle ofAntarctica. In 1910 , Scott started his trip with four other people. If they got there, they would be the first people to walk to the middle of Antarctica. It was a long and difficult walk , but in January 1911, they finally arrived. However, Scott found that he was not the first person to walk there. A man called Roald Amundsen and his team had arrived one month earlier.

What did Captain Scott do that was different to Roald Amundsen?
Captain Scott did not have the modern equipment that Roald Amundsen had and he did not know how to travel in the snow as well as Roald Amundsen.

Classwork

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or a:

1- If you want to………………… your friend's laptop, you should ask first.

a. burn **b. break** **c. breathe** **d. borrow**

2- Could you tell me the ………………… of that book?

a. contents **b. countries** **c. cities** **d. centuries**

3- The farmer puts all the farm ………………… in a large bin.

o. water **b. refuse** **c. air** **d. smoke**

4- A: Mr Hassan has bought a villa in Giza. B: ………………… wonderful!

a. What **b. How** **c. Where** **d. Why**

5- The boys were afraid when they saw a ………………… on the floor.

a. stick **b. snack** **c. stable** **d. snake**

6- Captain Scott was a famous English ………………… who loved adventure.

a. soldier **b. stick** **c. canal** **d. Lake**

7- The team decided to go ………………… a ride on their bikes.

a. with **b. at** **c. from** **d. for**

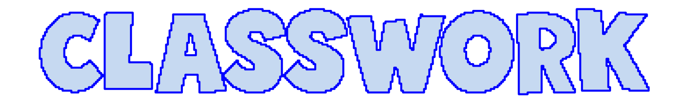
8- Why do you ………………… these foolish things, Hossam?

a. invite **b. do** **c. break** **d. make**

Language Function

Responding to news الاستجابة عند سماع الاخبار

Good news الاخبار السارة	
Really ? I can't believe it!	حقا ؟ انا لا استطيع تصديق ذلك
How wonderful!	شئ رائع!
Bad news الاخبار السيئة	
Oh dear!	يا الهى
Oh , no !	او لا !
How terrible!	شئ فظيع!



Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. Your friend's aunt died.
2. Your favourite football player scored a good goat.
3. Your father bought a new car.
4. Your brother has lost his bicycle.
5. Your friend has failed his maths test.
6. Your friend's sister has just had a baby.

Homework

1- Finish the following dialogue:

Ahmed is speaking to Ali about an accident.

Ahmed : It's very nice to meet you. Where were you ?
Ali : I was at the hospital. (1) ……………………………………………………………………
Ahmed : Your brother! What bad news! (2) ……………………………………………………?
All : No, it is not serious,
Ahmed : (3) ……………………………………………………………………………………?
Ali : No, he wasn't driving.
Ahmed : I hope he will get better soon.
Ali : (4)…………………………………………………………………………………………

2- Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You see people leaving rubbish on a beach.
2. You hear that scientists have found a new medicine which will help many people.
3. A friend tells you that you have won a prize. Express your happiness,
4. Your friend tells you that her brother is going to marry.
5. The Egyptian national team has reached the World Football Cup in Russia.
6. Ali says that he lost his new phone.

3- Read the following, then answer the questions:

It was just before sunrise when the plane landed. The three cousins got off and in an hour, they were out of the airport with their many suitcases.Three years before, business had been so bad that they left their village in search for better level.They spent one year in Libya and then left for Kuwait. They had much money enough to make them decide to go back to their village, about three hundred miles from Cairo, by taxi not by train though it would cost them much more money. The taxi driver decided to take for himself all their things. At noon and at a lonely place on the road, he stopped his car pretending that the engine was in need for cooling. They got off and all of them sat down under a tree to have a light meal.

After a short time, they rose to restart their journey but the taxi driver said the car was in need for a push. The three passengers went behind the taxi to push it forward. Suddenly, the taxi driver ran off at full speed leaving the three cousins behind. It was such a surprise that none of them thought of taking down the car number.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why did the three men decide to take a taxi ?
2. What kind of people was the taxi driver ?
3. How long did the three cousins stay in Kuwait ?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The plane was coming from ……………………

a. Libya **b. Egypt** **c. Kuwait** **d.The Sudan**

5. The cousins left the airport ……………………

a. before sunrise **b. after sunrise** **c. at noon** **d. in the evening**

4-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. How many eggs do the farmer's chickens …………………… each day ?

a. lie **b. give** **c. lay** **d. put**

2. Don't be …………………… ! You have already eaten a big ice cream.

a. honest **b. greedy** **c. hardworking** **d. kind**

3. The …………………… of the story is that you mustn't be unkind to people.

a. moral **b. mount** **c. monument** **d. address**

4. In summer, ants…………………… food for winter.

a. correct **b. collect** **c. predict** **d. expect**

5. I always…………………… things from my friends; we usually help each other.

a. return **b.give** **c.lend** **d. borrow**

6- My grandmother is very …………… She knows how to help most peoples who have a problem,

a. silly **b. unkind** **c. wise** **d. greedy**

7- Khadeejo was very upset after she lost her …………………… necklace.

a. wooden **b. woolen** **c. golden** **d. cotton**

8. What …………………… before you played tennis ?

a. you eat **b. you ate** **c. you had eaten** **d. had you eaten**

9. She…………………… watch TV until she had finished her homework. I

a. doesn't **b. didn't** **c. isn't** **d. wasn't**

10. The river was dry because it…………………… for two months.

a. doesn't rain **b. rained** **c. had not rained** **d. has not rained**

11. Ali had already eaten, so he …………………… to the cafe.

a. hasn't gone **b. didn't go** **c. hadn't gone** **d. wasn't going**

12. Mona…………………… the book before, so she bought it.

a). hasn't read **b. doesn't read** **c. didn't read** **d. hadn't read**

13- My mother …………………… English before she started her job at the bank.

a. hadn't studied **b. don't study** **c. doesn't study** **d. hasn't studied**

14- After Khalid …………………… TV, he decided to go to bed.

a. watch **b. watching** **c. had watched** **d. watches**

5-Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. First, I played football. Then, I went to bed. (After...,)

2. Roqia cooked food. Then, she watched the play. (until)
3. After getting dressed, Mohamed went to school, (before)
4. Hossam had dinner. Then. he studied English, (after)
5. I had eaten fish before I played tennis. (As soon as)
6. First I revised the lesson. Then I did the exercise. (As soon as)
7. By the time I sent Ali an email, I had found his email address. (until)
8. Ahmad travelled to Giza after he had prepared for the journey, (before)

6- Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences about one of the following:

1 -an animal that you like 2 -a visit to the zoo

3- We should always do the right thing

unit 17 Animal life in the past — Lessons 1 & 2

dinosaur	ديناصور	meteorite	نيزك
fossils	حفريات	volcano	بركان
theory	نظرية	atmosphere	الغلاف الجوى
documentary	وثائقى	lizard	سحلية
dust	تراب - غبار	erupt	ينفجر
both	كلا	ability	قدرة
probability	احتمال	crocodile	تمساح
disease	مرض	cause	يسبب
condition	شرط	die	يموت

Definitions

dinosaurs	ديناصورات	huge animals which have died out
neteorite	نيزك	a rock which comes from space
theory	نظرية	an idea which might be true
volcano	بركان	when it erupts, it throws out smoke and fire
Die out	ينقرض	stopped living
lizards	سحالى	animals that look like small crocodiles
dust	غبار	Something comes from volcanoes

Confusing words

event	حدث	accident	حادث
die	يموت	dead	ميت
cool	بارد	call	يتصل

Prepositions

On time	في الوقت المحدد	Sure about	متاكد بخصوص
Bring in	يحضر	Throw out	يلقى
Drive to	يوصل بالسيارة	Live on	يتغذى على

Expressions

Catch a disease	يصاب بمرض	Hit the earth	اصطدم بالارض
By now	قبل الان	How long age = when	متى
Catch the plane	يلحق بالطائرة	Look like	يشبه

Language Notes

Reason for سبب ل (معنوى) **cause of** سبب ل (مادى)

What's the reason for coming late? What's the cause of the fire?



Dinosaurs

Dinosaurs lived on earth for more than 150 million years. By studying fossils, scientists have worked out that dinosaurs died out about 65 million years ago. The fossils show that there were more than 700 kinds of dinosaurs. We also know that some of today's animals come from dinosaurs, such as lizards and birds.

Why did dinosaurs disappear? Scientists have suggested different ideas, for example, the weather became too hot or too cold, or the dinosaurs caught a terrible disease and died out. There are now some other theories. One theory is that there was a huge meteorite which hit the earth, or perhaps there were a lot of volcanoes.

What would have happened if a huge meteorite had hit the earth? There would have been a lot of smoke and dust. What would have happened if a lot of volcanoes had erupted at the same time? There would have been lots of dust and gas in the atmosphere. Both these events would have stopped the sun shining on the earth for many years. The dinosaurs would have disappeared very quickly.

Some scientists think that the dinosaurs disappeared slowly. The earth was changing and some areas became cooler and drier. Perhaps the dinosaurs could not get the food that they needed. If scientists had been on earth 65 million years ago, they would have seen why the dinosaurs disappeared

CLASSWORK

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or a:

1. There are lots of animals that………………… and they don't exist on earth.
a) died out b) died of c) died on d) died up
2. A ………………… is a rock which comes from space.
a) planet b) star c) meteorite d) moon
3. If a volcano………………… you will see smoke and fire.
a) hits b) rises c) develops d) erupts
4. Dinosaurs are found as………………… on earth now.
a) shells b) fossils c) coins d) water
5.1 don't find my mobile anywhere. It has …………………
a) shown b) hidden c) disappeared d) appeared
6. Scientists do experiments to prove their…………………
a) problems b) theories c) poems d) books
7.1 can't breathe because there is………………… everywhere.
a) water b) rain c) wind d) dust
8. Children shouldn't play outside when it's cold as it's easy to………………… diseases.
a) take b) catch c) see d) hold

GRAMMAR

The third conditional النوع الثالث من الجمل الشرطية

If + past perfect (had + P.P) ⟶ [would / could / might] + have + P.P

* يعبر النوع الثالث من الجمل الشرطية عن احداث تمت في الماضي و يستحيل تغييرها

* If they had studied hard, they would have succeeded.
* The team might have won if they had played well.

REWRITE تدريب

في بعض الاحيان يطلب السؤال استخدام If بدلا من because , so و لعمل ذلك
اذا كانت because نبدأ ب If و و نعكس الجمل

اذا كانت so نبدل ب If و تظل الجمل كما هي

اذا كانت الجملة في المضارع نستخدم الحالة الثانية و اذا كانت الجملة في الماضي نستخدم الحالة الثالثة

تحويل اى اثبات الى نفى و النفى الى اثبات

1-Hassan didn't play well, so he didn't win. (If)

-If Hassan had played well, he would have won.

2- I didn't buy that expensive jacket because I didn't have much money. (If)

-If I had had much money, I'd have bought that expensive jacket.

3-If he hadn't studied well, he wouldn't have succeeded. (Unless)

-Unless he had studied well, he wouldn't have succeeded,

4-If Habiba had been tall, she would hove played basketball. (because- so)

Habiba didn't play basketball because she wasn't tall.

Hobiba wasn't tall, so she didn't play basketball.

Classwork

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- If I had brought my camera, I .... a photo of you.

a. would take b. would have taken c.take d. will take

2- What would you have done if you .... your arm?

a- broke b. had broken c. would break d. break

3-If it .... a holiday yesterday, what would you have done.

a. had been b. was c. is d. where

4- If I .... enough money, I would hove bought a bike.

a- have b. had had c. had d. have had

5- Would you have enjoyed the film if you .... it?

a. watched b. had watched c. are watching d. watching

6- Unless he .... well, he wouldn't have won the gold medal.

a. trains b. had trained c. trained d. will train

7- If you had found some money yesterday, what .... with?

a will you have done b. would you do c. might you do d. would you have done

2-Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1- I didn't have much money, so I didn't buy that expensive toy. (If)

2- I forgot my library card. I couldn't borrow a book. (If)

3- She was ill, so she didn't attend the party. (If)

4- He got up early, so he caught the train. (Unless)

Homework

1- Finish the following dialogue:

Menna and Nour are talking about dinosaurs.

Menna : Did you see the documentary about dinosaurs ?
Nour : (1)……………………………………………………………………………………………………
Menna : Oh dear! I wish you had watched it.
Nour : (2) ……………………………………………………………………………………………………?
Menna : No, they died out millions of years ago.
Nour : What would have happened. If (3) ……………………………………………………?
Menna :They would have eaten all people on earth.
Nour : (4)……………………………………………………………………………………………………

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- …………………… are plants and animals that lived in the past.
a. Fossils **b. Fuels** **c. Farms** **d. Fields**

2- When that volcano erupts, there is a lot of dust and gas in the ……………………
o. painting **b. experiment** **c. atmosphere** **d. pollution**

3- Scientists think that dinosaurs …………………… a terrible disease.
a. threw **b. caught** **c. caused** **d. arrived**

4. A…………………… is an idea which might be true.
a. test **b. theory** **c.rock** **d. cause**

5. There was a…………………… storm. It damaged many buildings.
a. beautiful **b. nice** **c. good** **d. terrible**

6. The boy suddenly…………………… I couldn't see him again.
a. disappeared **b. appeared** **c. repaired** **d. prepared**

7. …………………… is something which comes from volcanoes.
a. Wind **b. Rain** **c. Dust** **d. Storm**

8. …………………… are animals which have died out.
a. Lizards **b. Crocodiles** **c. Elephants** **d. Dinosaurs**

9- I had brought my camera, I …………………… a photo of you.
a. would take **b. would have taken** **c. take** **d. will take**

10- What would you have done if you…………………… your arm?
a. broke **b. had broken** **c. would break** **d. break**

11- If it…………………… a holiday yesterday, what would you have done?
a. had been **b. was** **c. is** **d. where**

12- Would you have enjoyed the film rf you …………………… it?
a. watched **b. had watched** **c. are watching** **d. watching**

13 - Unless he …………………… well, he wouldn't have won the gold medal.
a. trains **b. hod trained** **c. trained** **d. will train**

14-What …………………… if I had driven too fast?
a. happened **b. would have happened** **c. would happen** **d. will happen**

3- Taqwa would have won the race if she …………………… well.

a. practising b. practiced c. had practised d. practise

3- Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to the same meaning:

1- I didn't have much money, so I didn't buy that expensive toy. (If)
2-I forgot my library card. I couldn't borrow a book. (If)
3- She was ill. so she didn't attend the party. (If)
4- He got up early, so he caught the train. (Unless)
5- I was tired. I didn't watch the documentary about dinosaurs. (If)
6- Because my father drove me to school, I arrived on time. (If)
7- Mustafa was late because he didn't take a taxi. (if)
8- Mo'men couldn't help you as he wasn't a doctor. (If)
9- If he hadn't gone to bed late, he wouldn't have felt tired, (Unless)
10- If I had needed your camera, I'd have borrowed it. (so)
11. I was too busy to visit my aunt yesterday. (If)
12. His carelessness made him fail. (unless)

4-Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences on one of the following:

1- Dinosaurs 2-An animal you like.
3- What you would have done if you had had a lot of money last year.
4-the life of animals in the past

unit 17 Animal life in the past — Lessons 3, 4 & 5

clay	صلصال	Ice age	عصر الجليد	Stone age	العصر الحجري
approximately	تقريبا	Cave art		فن على جدران الكهف	
hut	كوخ	bones	عظام	pots	اواني
pans	طاسات	soup	شوربة	cans	علب
distance	مسافة	explain	يفسر	exactly	بالضبط
Boy lions	ذكور الاسود	Girl lions	اناث الاسود	melt	يذوب
wooden	خشبي	hippo	فرس النهر	sunlight	ضوء الشمس
conclusion	خاتمة	wings	اجنحة	pterosaur	تيروصور
insect	حشرة	wheat	قمح	sew	يخيط
drawings	رسومات	protect	يحمي	weigh	يزن

Confusing words

sew	يخيط	saw	منشار - رأى
skin	جلد - بشرة	leather	جلد مدبوغ
mouth	فم	mouse	فأر

Prepositions

Welcome to	مرحبا في	By the river	بجوار النهر
On the walls	على الجدران	On the beach	على الشاطئ
Drive to	يوصل بالسيارة	Move around	يتجول

Expressions

Catch animals	يصطاد حيوانات	Keep warm	يظل دافئا
Make fire	يشعل نار	Sew/make clothes	يخيط ملابس
Keep sheep	يربى اغنام	With mouth open	افواههم مفتوحة

Listening

A museum guide talking to some students.

Guide : Welcome tothe history museum. Have you all seen the dinosaurs?

Children : Yes.

Guide : Good. Now many people ask me, "Did dinosaurs live at the same time as people?" The answer is no! Dinosaurs lived approximately 65 million years ago. Scientists are not sure exactly when people started living on earth. We think it was about 250,000 years ago. Today I'm going to talk to you about some people who lived only 8,000 years ago. One of the most important times in history was when people learned to make things with stone. Then they were better at catching animals and could build better homes. This was called the Stone Age. At the beginning of the Stone Age, people moved from place to place. Why on earth did they do this? They needed to look for food.

Girl 1 : Where did they live?

Guide : That's a good question. There weren't any houses then. They lived in caves. Archaeologists have found cave art in different places round the world,

Girl 2 : What did they eat?

Guide :They ate plants and also meat from the animals they caught.

Girl 3 : How did they keep warm?

Guide : They learnt to make fire. Then. in around 8,000 BCE, people began farming in North Africa. They planted wheat and they kept sheep. They began to build huts to live in so they wouldn't have to move around. What else do we know about this time? Well, archaeologists have found animal bones which people used to sew clothes. We know that people used animal skins to make

their clothes. These kept them warm. It was perhaps 4,000 BCE, when people started making pots and pans out of clay. This meant they could eat different food, like soup.

Girl 4 : Did they have cans of soup?

Guide : No! People couldn't eat soup in cans until sometime in the nineteenth century. You can see that life was very different from today.

LISTENING

Narrator 1 : One

Narrator 2 : Hippos can walk and run very fast, but they can't swim. When they move quickly through water, they are walking or pushing themselves off other objects. So the answer is a.

Narrator 2 : Boy lions sleep for longer than girl lions. The girls have to catch the animals to eat, but many boy lions sleep for twenty hours a day. So the answer is c.

Narrator 1 : Three

Narrator 2 : After it is born, a baby giraffe can stand up after about 30 minutes and can usually run after ten hours. So the answer is b.

Narrator 1 : Four

Narrator 2 : Zebras can run up to 65 kilometres an hour, so it is very difficult for other animals to catch them. So the answer is c.

Narrator 1 : Five

Narrator 2 : Crocodiles often wait by rivers with their mouths open when they are It helps them to be cooler. So the answer is a.

WORKBOOK

Pterosaurs looked like large birds. They lived approximately one hundred million years ago. They had big wings and a long neck. If they hadn't had a long neck, they wouldn't have been able to catch fish. People have found fossils of pterosaurs in many places, including Europe and Africa.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The farmer built a small .... at the top of his field.

a. hole **b. nest** **c. hut** **d. cave**

2. Archaeologists found remains of animal..................... in the old cave.

a, bones **b. pans** **c. pains** **d. pots**

3. He rested inside a..................... while climbing the mountain.

a. hut **b. hill** **c. cave** **d. cover**

4. We..................... clothes with needles.

a. sew b. saw c. sow d. see

5. The pterosaur was a large flying…………………..
a. animal b. insect c. snake d. ant

6. People have found………………….. of the pterosaur under the sand of some deserts.
a. skin b. food c. fossils d. models

7. What is the ………………….. of the accident ?
a. reason b. building c. cause d. happen

8. When we leave ice in the open air, it…………………..
a. evaporates b. melts c. appears d. protects

Language Function

Giving dates you are not sure of اعطاء تواريخ عند عدم التأكد

………………………….. about ………………….. ago	منذ حوالي
Dinsaurs lived about 65 million years ago.	
………………………….. may be ………………….. ago	ربما منذ
We think that people first lived may be 250 000 years ago.	
………………………….. almost ………………….. ago	تقريبا منذ
I'm going to talk to you about some people who lived almost 8000 years ago	
………………………….. approximately ………………….. ago	تقريبا منذ
The Stone Age was approximately 8000 years ago.	
In around ………………………..	في حوالي عام
In around 8000 BCE , people began farming in North Africa.	
It was perhaps …………………………. When ……. عندما …………….	ربما كانت
It was perhaps 400 BCE when people started making pots and pans of clay.	



Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1- A friend asks you when the first car was mode.
2- Your cousin asks you when your school was built.
3- Your teacher asks you for the age of the oldest part of Cairo.
4- Your teacher asks you when the Pyramids were built.

Workwork

1- Finish the following dialogue between:

Omar and Habiba are talking about hippos

Omar : Yesterday, we learnt about hippos at school.
Habiba : Really? ..(1)………………………………………………………………………………………..?
Omar : Hippos live in Africa.
Habiba : How long do they sleep a day?
Omar : ..(2)…………………………………………………………………………………………….
Habiba : How much do you think they weigh?
Omar : ..(3)……………………………………………………………………………………………
Habiba : ..(4)……………………………………………………………………………………………?
Omar ` : They eat about 35 kilos of grass a day.

2- Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. Your brother asks you what hippos were like.
2- Your friend asks you when your father was born. You aren't sure, but you give an answer.
3- A friend asks when the Egyptian Museum was built.
4-A friend asks when the World War I started.
5- Your friend asks you about the age of your house.
6-You want to know when dinosaurs ftrst lived.
7-Your teacher asks you about the Ice Age.

3-Read the following, then answer the questions i

If you go to some places in Asia, you might see some amazing snakes which can fly! Scientists have asked why they do this. The answer is that it is easier for the snakes to travel this way because they live in an area full of tall trees. If they didn't fly, they would have to go down one tree and then climb up the next one. It is much easier and quicker for them to jump from one tree and fly to the next. The snakes can fly about 24 metres at ten metres a second. How do they do this ? Scientists now know that the snakes put their bodies in the shape of an Sand move very slowly. If the scientists hadn't used digital cameras to film them in slow motion, we might never have known **this**.

a. Answer the following questions:

1. What is unusual about some of the snakes in Asia ?
2. Why don't the snakes climb down one tree and climb up the next ?
3. Why do you think that the scientists studied the snakes ?

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The expression in slow motion means watching something ……………………
a more slowly than usual b. faster than usual c very carefully d. didn't fly
5. What does the underlined word "this" refer to ?
a. why snakes fly b. where snakes live c. what snakes eat d. how snakes fly

4-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The ……………………came from space and landed in the sea.
a. mountain b. minaret c meteorite d monument
2. People have used……………………to make cups for hundreds of years.
a. stone b. clay c. straw d. sticks
3. There is a/an ……………………that the moon was once part of the earth.
a. technology b. idea c. theory d. area
4- What would have happened if a lot of……………………had erupted?

a. stones b. rivers c. volcanoes d. dinosaurs

6- Where have people found ……………………of the pterosaur?

a. fuels b. fossils c. farms d. fields

7- We need to……………………many of our animals If we do not want them to die out.

a. encourage b. predict c. protect d.produce

8. Dinosaurs lived……………………65 million years ago.

a. nearby b. approximate c. approximately d.really

9. If Osama had got the job of the bank, he……………………travelled a lot.

a. will have b. would c had d. would have

10. Ahmed……………………met his uncle if he had come late.

a. wouldn't have b wouldn't c. will d. won't

11. If I……………………a lot of money, I would have built a villa.

a. have b. had c. had had d. have had

12- If Leila had more free time, she ……………………read more books in English.

a. would b. would have c. will d. must

13. ……………………Mustafa had been careful, he would have been hurt.

a. If b. Unless c. Until d. When

14. Dinosaurs lived……………………earth for more than 150 million years.

a. on b. in c. at d. of

15. What would have happened if you.......................... married her?

a. have b.had c. were d. did

5-Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. I didn't recognise your cousin, so I didn't say hello, (If)
2. I didn't go to work because I was ill. (If)
3. If he had studied hard, he would have succeeded. (because)
4. He couldn't buy a car as he was very poor. (If)
5. If he hadn't done the shopping, his wife would have become angry. (Unless)

6-Write an email of SEVEN (7) sentences about one of the following:

1- A visit to the history museum 2- A book you read about man's life 8,000 years ago

3-The Ice Age. 4-The Stone Age.

Unit 18 Sea life — Lessons 1 & 2

Sea life	الحياة البحرية	snorkelling	الغطس	coral	مرجان
stingray	سمك الراى	shark	سمكة القرش	rough	هائج
twice	مرتين	flat	مسطح – شقة	dolphin	دولفين
papyrus	ورق بردى	lamb	خروف صغير	reef	حاجز (مرجانى)
spinach	سبانخ	calm	هادئ	penguin	البطريق
National park	حديقة عامة	anywhere	فى اى مكا	special	خاص

Definitions

coral	المرجان	A group of animals that live together in large groups.
stingray	سمك الراى	A big , flat fish that lives at the bottom of the sea.
dolphins	دولفين	Are very intelligent. They often jump out of the water.

Confusing words

Lamb	لحم ضان	lamp	مصباح
park	منتزه	bark	ينبح (الكلب)

Prepositions

Revise for	يراجع من اجل	By the sea	بجوار البحر
On a website	علي موقع الكترونى	Under the water	تحت الماء

Expressions

Have a look	يلقى نظرة	Have free time	لديه وقت فراغ
Take a test	يؤدى امتحان	As interesting as	شيق
Miss the bus	يفوته الاتوبيس	At the bottom of	في قاع

Language Notes

go play do

- **go + ing** رياضات تنتهي ب

go (fishing ,diving swimming, cycling, ice skating, snorkelling,)
You can go snorkelling in Hurghado.

- **play +** رياضات تلعب بالكرة

play (football , hockey , tennis , volleyball, basketball, handball etc.)
- You should be fit to play tennis.

- **do +** تاتي مع الرياضات العنيفة

do (karate/judo) He does karate in a famous club.

else (adv) أخر

somewhere - everything - anybody بمعنى اخر/بعد else تستخدم

- It's **too crowded here. Let's go** somewhere **else.**

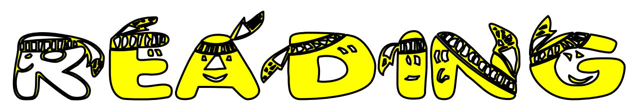
where - thing - one - body و تنتهى ب any - every - some- no . تستخدم مع كل الكلمات التى تبدأ

- anywhere - everywhere - somewhere - nowhere
- anything - everything - something - nothing
- anyone - everyone - someone - no one
- anybody - everybody - somebody - nobody

Do you want anything else?

Who / What / Where/ How / Why تستخدم بعد

- Who else **ordered tea?**



Khaled's blog

I live near **Ras Mohammed**, which is a famous **national park** in Egypt.I go diving there two or three times a week. If I had more free time, I could go diving every day! The **Red Sea** near here is fantastic. If you dive in some parts of the world, the sea will be **rough** and **cold**. Here the water is very **calm** and **warm**. If you didn't want to go diving could go **snorkelling** and you could still see a lot of **sea life**.

The **coral** here is wonderful. The colours are **beautiful** and the coral is of different **sizes**. Did you know that coral looks like **plants**, but it is very **small animals** that live **together** in large groups? The coral is **protected**, and the sea life is **fantastic**.

There are fish here that you can't see anywhere else in the world. If you dive to the bottom, you will probably see a **stingroy**. However, if you went to **Shark Reef**, you might not see a yhork. You have to go at the right time of year. You can often see **dolphins** and they are fun to swim with. **Birds** also love Ras Mohammed because there are so many fish for them to eat. In **autumn**, thousands of birds stop here on their way to **Africa**.

Have a look at my photos. There are hundreds of them on my website. Of course, if I hadn't taken my special camera, I wouldn't have taken any photos under the water.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Ras Mohammed is a famous .... park in Egypt.

a. industrial **b. personal** **c. moral** **d. national**

2- A .... is a big, flat fish that lives at the bottom of the sea.

a. cow **b. lamb** **c. stingray** **d. horse**

3- A .... is used for watching far objects.

a. fan **b. printer** **c telescope** **d. radio**

4..................... my way to school, I met one of my old friends.

a At **b.In** **c. On** **d. With**

5- The groups of coral look .... plants, but they are very small animals.

a. different **b. similar** **c. same** **a. like**

6- The Red Sea is good for ....

a driving b. cooking c. diving d. smoking

7- It was too hot, so we decided not to go ....

a. somewhere b. anywhere c. where d. nowhere

8- If I had more .... time, I could go diving every day.

a. busy b. free c. different d. same

GRAMMAR

First , second and third condional الحالات الشرطية الثلاثة

The first condiondal الحالة الشرطية الاولى

تعبر عن شئ محتمل الحدوث فى المستقبل

If Unless	Present simple مضارع بسيط verb (جمع) مصدر + (s / es / ies) مع المفرد	will / can / may/might + المصدر

If Ali **plays** well , he **will** win the match.

Unless you **work** hard , you **won't earn** a lot of money.

Present simple مضارع بسيط verb (جمع) مصدر + (s / es / ies) مع المفرد	If Unless	will / can/ may / might + المصدر

Ali **will** win the match **if** he **plays** well .

You **won't earn** a lot of money **unless** you **work** hard.

The second condiondal الحالة الشرطية الثانية

تعبر عن مواقف مستحيلة الحدوث و الواقف الخيالية و النصيحة

If Unless	Past simple ماضى بسيط التصريف الثانى للفعل	would / could /might + المصدر

If Ali **played** well , he **would** win the match.

Unless you **worked** hard , you **wouldn't earn** a lot of money.

If I were you , I'd study hard.

Present simple مضارع بسيط التصريف الثانى للفعل	If Unless	would / could /might + المصدر

Ali **would** win the match **if** he **played** well .

You **wouldn't earn** a lot of money **unless** you **worked** hard.

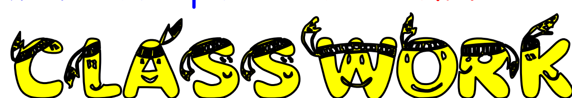
The third condiondal

الحالة الشرطية الثالثة

تعبر عن مواقف مستحيلة الحدوث و الواقف الخيالية و النصيحة

If Unless	Past perfect ماضي تام had + P.P التصريف الثالث	would have + P.P التصريف الثالث might have + P.P التصريف الثالث

If he had studied well , he would have passed his exams.



1-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 - If I hadn't taken my special camera, I .... any photos.

a. wouldn't have taken **b. would have taken**
c. can't have taken **d. will have taken**

2- If Haytham worked in a bakery, he .... fresh bread every doi,

a. would have had **b. would have** **c. will have** **d. could have had**

3- If I see him. I...................... ask him to help me with my homework.

a. might have **b. would** **c. would have** **d. will**

4- If you ....to go diving, you could go snorkelling.

a. don't want **b. didn't want** **c. hadn't wanted** **d. haven't wanted**

5- If I .... you, I would go diving in the Red Sea.

a. can **b. were** **c. am** **d. had been**

6- If they went to Alexandria in May, it .... be very warm

a. won't **b. might not** **c. cant** **d. may not**

2-Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1 - You should help your mother with the housework. (If)

2- Ayman was careless, so he failed his exams, (if)

3- Hala isn't very good at English, so she can't get a job in London. (If)

4- If Jana hadn't been busy yesterday, she would have come to the party (so)

HOMEWORK

1- Finish the following dialogue:

Ahmed and Hamza are talking about Ras Mohamed national park

Ahmed : Have you ever been to Ras Mohamed national park ?
Hamza : (1) ....
Ahmed : Is the Red Sea near there? .
Hamza : (2) ....
Ahmed : (3).. ?
Hamza : I would like to go diving every day.
Ahmed : (4) ....?
Hamza : I could see the coral at the bottom of the sea.

2-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- I went to the Aqua Park and saw two .... playing in the pool.

a. dolphins b. lions c.monkeys d. tortoises

2. I searched for my mobile but I can't find it………………….
a. anywhere b. everywhere c. nowhere d. somewhere

3. I advise you not to go diving today, the sea is ………………….
a. calm b. wavy c. rough d. quiet

4- Don't go diving when the sea is ………………….
a. rough b. calm c. noisy d. quiet

5- …………………. is a group of animals that live together in large groups.
a. Coffee b. Moral c. Coal a. Coral

6- The shark is a part of…………………. life.
a. sea b. land c. plant d. farm

7…………………. is a kind of plant life.
a. Shark b. Dolphin c. Coral d. Spinach

8. Have a…………………. at my photos.
a. lack b. lock c. lake d, look

9. If Sama…………………. for the test well, she will get high marks.
a. revised b. had revised c. revises d. revise

10. If Nader visited the Pyramids, he…………………. ride a camel. I'm sure of that.
a. may b. might c. would d. will

11- There are a lot of photos…………………. my website.
a. in b. at c. on a. over

12- If you go to the library, which boolc …………………. borrow?
a. you can b. you will c. would you a. will you

13- Do you want something ………………….?
a. also b. else c. until d. If

14-Have you been …………………. as interesting as Alexandria?
a. anyone b. anything c. anywhere d. anybody

15- If we revised for the test, we …………………. get 100 percent.
a. would have b, might c. can d. will

16- If the weather is good today, we …………………. go swimming.
a. would b. could c. can d. would have

17- …………………they visited the farm, they could see lots of lambs.
a. Since b. Until c. If d. Unless

18- They could practise speaking English …………………. they went to London.
a. since b. until c. unless d. if

3. Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to givem same meaning:

1. I didn't know Rodina, so I didn't speak to her. (If)
2. Study hard to succeed, (If)
3. I don't have a lot of money. I can't buy a car. (If)
4. I couldn't help her because I am not a doctor. (If)
5. Menna didn't run fast so she lost the race. (had run)
6. He plays badly. He is going to lose the match. (If)
7. Do your homework, or the teacher will be angry with you. (If)
8. He was ill,That's why he didn't come to school. (If)

9- You shouldn't watch too much TV. (were)
10- If Naglaa doesnt study hard, she will get low marks, (unless)
11- It's too hot, so we can't go to the sea. (If)

4-Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences about one of the following

1- sea animals
2- a visit to Ras Mohammed national park
3- The coral in the Red Sea.
4- You went to Ras Mohammed last month. Tell your friend about what you did and what you saw there.
5-You saw a TV programme on sea life. Tell your friend about what you saw.

Unit 18 Sea life — Lessons 3,4 & 5

instructor	مدرب - مرشد	relief	ارتياح	wreck	حطام السفينة
excitement	اثارة	diver	غواص	ladies	سيدات
sailfish	سمكة الشراع	abbreviation	اختصار	gentleman	رجل نبيل
pepper	فلفل	below	اسفل	party	حفلة
goodness	طيبة	turtle	سلحفة مائية	tortoise	سلحفة برية
phew	صيحة للارتياح	unlikely	من غير المحتمل	island	جزيرة
grey	رمادى	hide	يخفى - يختبئ	whale	حوت
sand	رمل	In fact	فى الواقع	equipment	معدات

Prepositions

Go away	يبتعد	Fall off	يسقط من على
Up to	تصل الى	careful	حذر من

Expressions

Get behind	يختبئ خلف	Feel frightened	يشعر بالخوف
What a relief!	كم هذا مريح	The wrong time	الوقت الخاطئ
Take notes	يسجل ملاحظات	One of the	واحدة من

Language Notes

Live in (مكان) يعيش فى live on + طعام live for مدة

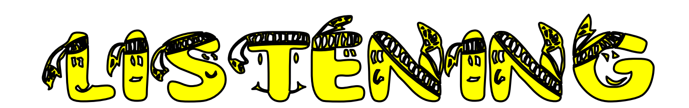
Mai **lives in** Damietta.
Cows **live on** grass.

Green turtles **can live for** 23 years or more.

Ready to + المصدر ready for + noun اسم / ing

I'm **ready to** play chess. Ali is **ready for** the exam.

Abbreviation	Meaning	
a.m.	In the morning	صباحا
p.m.	In the afternoon	مساءا
Km/h	Kilometres an hour	كيلومتر – ساعة
TV	Television	تليفزيون
cm	centimetre	سنتيمتر



Tamer : Good morning, ladies and gentlemen.

Tourists : Good morning,

Tamer : My name is Tamer and I'm your diving instructor for today. Unfortunately Samir, the instructor you had with you . yesterday, isn't well so he can't come today. I just want, to talk to you for a few minutes before we go on our dive today. So, have you got all your diving equipment with you?

Tourists : Yes, thanks.

Tamer : Good. Let me tell you where we are going today. First we're going to Shark Reef. This is where you could see some grey sharks. Have any of you swum near sharks before?

Tourist : No, never.

Tamer : OK, well, if a shark is eating food or it feels frightened, it might not be happy to see you. However, we do not look like a shark's food, so they won't try to eat us! If we see a shark, we will get behind a coral wall and hide. The shark will relax and quickly go away. However, I'm sure we won't see a shark today. It is the wrong time of year.

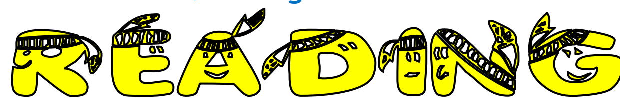
Tourist 2 : Phew! What a relief!

Tourist 3 : Thank goodness for that!

Tamer : You will, of course, see a lot of wonderful fish. After Shark Reef, we will move to Yolanda Reef where there is a wreck It's a very old boat and it has been there a long time. There , are thousands of fish to see here and also turtles. Some of the sea life is almost impossible to see because they hide in the corol. Swim near me so that I con show you what to see. Diving isn't dangerous, but you must be careful so remember to watch what I am doing. Near Yotanda Reef there is a fantastic coral garden full of beautifully coloured corol. You will be amazed,

Tourist 1 : Great!

Tourist 2 :1 can't wait!
Tourist 3 : I'm really looking forward to this dive.
Tamer : Now any questions? OK, let's go!



The Red Sea is one of the warmest seas in the wortd. For this reason, hundreds of fish and animals live there. In fact, if we didn't have the Red Sea, the world would have 20 percent fewer kinds of fish.

• One of the special kinds of fish that live in the Red Seo is the sailfish.This is the fastest fish in the world. It can Jump out of the water at 110 kmh.

• Stingroys also live in the Red Sea. They live in groups of five or six and usually stay at the bottom of the sea. They like it there because other fish can't see them.

• There are also more than 40 kinds of sharks. Some of these are up to three metres long, but not all of them are dangerous. You may be surprised to know that some coral can be more dangerous! Divers need to be careful of fire coral. It is called this because if you touch it, it will burn you.

• Larger animals also live in the Red Sea. Green turtles grow to about 1.5 metres long and live for 23 years or more. If they are in water, they can swim at about 55 kilometres an hour, but they are very slow when they walk on beaches. They usually only visit beaches every two to four years, when they are ready to lay eggs. A mother turtle can lay

CLASSWORK

• **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1-Don't worry if you haven't dived before. The diving ……………will show you what to do.

a. nurse **b. mechanic** **c. pilot** **d. instructor**

2- Children like to build sandcasttes on the beaches by using ………………

a. sugar **b. water** **c, sand** **d, paper**

3- It was a ………………to hear that nobody was hurt in the accident.

a. relief **b. life** **c. half** **d. cliff**

4- The ……………… is the fastest fish in the worid.

a. sailor **b. seller** **c. sailfish** **d. tiger**

5- When we saw the wonderful coral, we were ………………

a. sad **b. amazed** **c. angry** **d. upset**

6-If we see a shark, we will get behind a coral wall and ………………

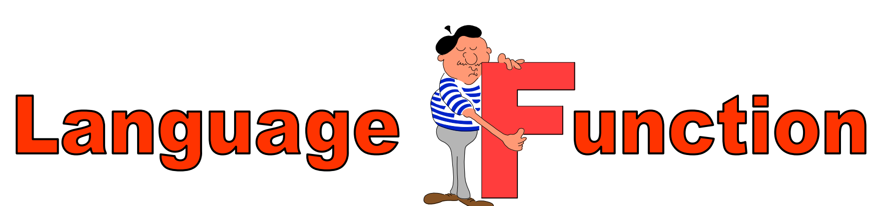
a. dance **b. guide** **c. hide** **d. call**

7- "p.m" means. ………………

a, in the afternoon **b. in the morning** **c. in the winter** **d. in the summer**

8- here was a lot of ………………when the tourists saw some dolphins following the boat.

a. excitement **b. developments** **c. telescopes** **d. museums**



Showing relief التعبير عن الشعور بالارتياح

Phew!	صوت للتعبير عن الارتياح
What a relief!	كم هذا مريح !
Thank goodness for that!	الحمد لله

Showing excitement التعبير عن الإثارة

Great!	عظيم
I can't wait!	لا استطيع الانتظار
I'm looking forward to that!	اتطلع لذلك



Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. Your father tells you that you can go to the beach tomorrow.
2. You thought you did badly in an exam, but you did well.
3. Grandma tells you that your friend can come to the family party on Saturday.



1- Finish the following dialogue:

Hala and Marwa are talking about a school trip to the Red Sea

Hala : Hi. Marwa. Where were you last week ?
Marwa : Hi, Hala. (1) ....
Hala : The Red Sea! (2) ....
Marwa : (3) ....?
Hala : We went with our school teachers.
Marwa : (4) ....?
Hala : We went on a dive and saw different kinds of fish.
Marwa : It's a fantastic trip!

2- Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1- There is news that Mohammed Salah is visiting your school.
2-You hear that a ship sank in the sea but the police saved the passengers.

3- You hear that your friend got better after the accident he had.
4-The news said that a bad storm is coming, but now they say it had moved away.
5-Your parents say that they are taking you to the cinema tomorrow. You are very excited.
6- A friend tells you that you have won a prize. You are very surprised.
7- You heard that your friend had on accident, but he wasn't hurt.

3- Read the following, then answer the questions:

Dolphins are marine animals that are related to whales and porpoises. A marine animal is one that lives in the water. Dolphins are found all over the world in oceans, rivers and marshes. Dolphins are meat eaters; they feed on fish and other marine life. They often swim together in groups and they have good eyesight and good hearing but do not have a sense of smell. Dolphins come in different sizes. Some are smaller than the **average** person, but others, such as the orca , can be 30 feet long or more than five times than the average person. Dolphins are very intelligent and communicate with each other using clicks and whistles. All dolphins are good swimmers and funny swimmers, too. If you go near the seashores, you might see dolphins playing and swimming happily **there**.

A) Answer the following questions:

1.Where do dolphins live?
2. How do dolphins communicate with each other?
3. Dolphins love to swim in groups. What might this tell you about their nature?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, br c or d:

4. Dolphins can't .... well.
a) see **b) hear** **c) smell** **d) swim**
5. The underlined word "there" refers to ....
a) oceans **b) rivers** **c) canals** **d) seashores**

4-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The diving .... showed us how to dive under water.
a, hero **b.interviewer** **c. instructor** **d. inventor**
2. That big, flat fish is a......................
a. shark **b. coral** **c. whale** **d. stingray**
3. When they were diving, they saw coral and the...................... of an old boat
a. wreck **b.rock** **c.book** **d.crew**
4. A/An .... is a big, flat fish that lives at the bottom of the sea.
a. lamb **b. stingray** **c. spider** **d. owl**
5. It was a .... to hear that no one was killed in the air crash.
a. belief **b. reef** **c. relief** **d. beef**
6.When we went to Ras Mohammed, we saw the beautiful............. at the bottom of the sea.
a. pyramids **b. mountains** **c. corals** **d. museum**
7. Emad is our diving...................... He tells us what to do under water.
a. teacher **b. doctor** **c. player** **d. instructor**
8. If we see All, we .... ask him to phone you.
a. would **b. would have** **c will** **d.do**
9. If Rahma had more free time. she...................... read more books in English.
a. would **b. would have** **c. will** **d. must**
10. Unfortunately, Soha did...................... in her exams.

a. good **b. well** **c. bad** **d. badly**

11- The Red Sea is good………………… diving because the water is clean and wannf

a. by **b. with** **c. at** **d. for**

12- If he ………………… us tomorrow, we'd have a happy time.

a. visit **b. visits** **c. visited** **d. had visited**

13- If he had taken the medicine, he ………………… better.

a. would fell **b. would have felt** **c. might feel** **d. will feel**

14- If you ………………… alone, it'll be dangerous,

a. dive **b. dived** **c. had dived** **d. to dive**

15. Nour………… have found the keys if he had searched for them well. I'm sure of that.

a. would **b. could** **c. might** **d. may**

16. If the museum………………… open on Friday, we would see the mummies.

a. is **b. was** **c. had** **d. are**

5-Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning :

1. If I see Mohamed. perhaps I'll ask him to help me with my homework. (might)
2. He didn't study hard, so he failed the exam. (had)
3. If he had come to the party, he would have seen Ahmed. (because)
4- Ayman didn't win the match because he didnt practise well. (If)
5- I want to visit my grandmother, but I don't have time. (If)
6- You should study hard. (If)
7. Perhaps Mohab would pay for your dictionary if he lost it. (might)
8. The moon was full yesterday, so I could see at night, (if)
9. I saw the stingray when I dived to the bottom of the sea. (if)

6-Write a paragraph of SEVEN (7) sentences about one of the following:

1 - a visit to the Red Sea 2- A sea animal that you like.

3- Sea life. 4- Sharks. 5- Animals that live in the Red Sea.

Review F

Reading

Animals in danger

Some of the most beautiful animals on our planet are in danger or have died out. Here, we look at three of them

River dolphin

The river dolphin is from China. This mammal was already in danger in 1996: there were not many of them in China's rivers . In 2006, scientists couldn't fnd any. They may have all died out.

The western black rhino

Rhinos are animals that belong to the dinosaur family, but they didn't die out with them. They are the second largest land mammals and many live in Africa. The western black rhinos could run very fast, but many rhinos were killed for sport. If people had not

killed the rhinos، they would still be in Africa. The last western black rhino was seen in 2003.

Coral

Coral is made of very small animals. A lot of our coral is in danger of disappearing. We don't have as much coral as we did in the past and some kinds of stingray and many fsh have died out because of this. Coral is in danger because there is more pollution in the sea and the sea water is becoming warmer. If the coral disappears, more sea life may also disappear.

Listening

Mona : What a relief, Salma! That could have been terrible!

Salma : Mona, what are you talking about? Were you in an accident؟

Mona : No, no, no! I'm reading this article about space. It says that if a meteorite had hit earth a few years ago, we would have all died!

Salma : Is this written in a science magazine؟

Mona : No, it's here on the internet. Look .It also says that if a volcano erupts somewhere in Europe, it will be very dangerous for people here in Egypt.

Salma : I don't think that will ever happen .

Mona : Oh, and look here. It says that a lot of sea life dies if a ship sinks in the sea .

Salma : Let me see that. Why on earth do you read blogs like these? These blogs are often not true. Here, let's go to Science Journal Blog, written by students at the university. In my opinion, it's one of the best

Mona : Phew! I thought that the world was going to end. Why do people write silly things like that؟

Salma : I don't know!

Tamer :Now any questions? OK, let's go!

Mona : Wow, look at this park that they talk about in Science Journal! There's a special park for animals in danger of dying out, like tigers and rhinos. If we visit the park, we can also help.

Salma : That's nice, but I think we should help this hospital in Cairo which helps children who are ill .

Mona :Well, let's call both places and see when we can visit .

Salma :Great! See, if I hadn't come to visit you you'd still be worried about a meteorite hitting earth or a volcano erupting

Practice Test 6a

1-Finish the following dialogue:

Amal and Lamia are talking about a man's journey along the Nile.

Amal : In the news, it says that a man has walked all the way along the Nile.
Lamia : Yes, I heard about this. It's unusual! (1).. **Why did he do it** ?
Amal : He did it because he wanted to see if it was possible.
Lamia : I heard that at the beginning of the journey, he was very ill, but (2) **he got better.**
Amal : That's good. (3) **Is he going to write about his journey himself** ?
Lamia : Yes, he said he would. It will probably be a very interesting journal to read.
Amal : (4) **I couldn't agree with you more** .

2-Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1 Your friend asks you when your father was born. You aren't sure, but you give an answer.
Maybe in 1977./About 40 years ago
2 You hear that a tourist was lost in the desert, but that he has just been found.
What a relief! / Phew!
3 You hear that scientists have found a new medicine which will help many people.
How wonderful!
I wish that it was not windy./What a pity that it is windy.

3-Read the following, then answer the questions:

If you go to some places in Asia, you might see some amazing snakes which can fly! Scientists have asked why they do this. The answer is that it is easier for the snakes to travel this way because they live in an area full of tall trees. If they didn't fly, they would have to go down one tree and then climb up the next one. It is much easier and quicker for them to jump from one tree and fly to the next. The snakes can fly about 24 metres at ten metres a second. How do they do this? Scientists now know that the snakes put their bodies in the shape of an S and move very slowly. If the scientists hadn't used digital cameras to film them in slow motion, we might never have known **this**.

1 What is unusual about some of the snakes in Asia? **They can fy.**
2 Why don't the snakes climb down one tree and climb up the next?
Because it is quicker for them to fy.
3 Why do you think that the scientists studied the snakes?
because the snakes are unusual, and because the scientists wanted to fnd out how they could fly
4 The expression in slow motion means watching something .
a more slowly than usual b faster than usual c very carefully d in a laboratory
5 What does the underlined word this refer to?
a why snakes fly b where snakes live c what snakes eat **d how snakes fly**

C. The Reader

4 a. Match column A with column B:

A		B	
1-	The doctors	a.	had easier work in the end
2-	Skinner	b.	took Black Beauty to a large feld to give him good food
3-	Mr Thoroughgoo	c.	had no problems all his life.
4-	Black Beauty	d.	was also a taxi driver.
	1-e 2-d 3-b 4-a	e.	told Jerry that he should stop driving a taxi

b. Answer the following questions:

1-Why were holidays not always an easy time for taxi drivers?

because they had a lot of work taking people from house to house

2 What happened to Jerry when he had to wait outside the house of a rich man?

He became ill because it was very cold.

3 Why did Polly write to Mrs Fowler? **Jerry could not drive taxis any more, so Polly wanted to fnd work for him.**

4 Why do you think that Skinner told the girl not to worry after she said that Black Beauty looked too weak to carry their bags?

think Skinner told the girl not to worry because he didn't want to lose money. He had to work for seven days a week to get enough money, even when his horses were weak or ill.

5 Why do you think that Black Beauty was sold at the part of the market where the horses were old or ill-looking?

cause Black Beauty had been ill and now he looked old

5- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 If Osama had got the job at the bank, he……………………travelled a lot.

a will have　　b would　　c had　　d would have

2 If we see Ali, we ……………………ask him to phone you.

a would　　b would have　　c will　　d do

3 The river was very dry because it …………………… for two months.

a doesn't rain　　b rained　　c had not rained　　d has not rained

4 Don't be …………………… ! You have already eaten a big ice cream.

a honest　　b greedy　　c hardworking　　d kind

5 The …………………… came from space and landed in the sea.

a mountain　　b minaret　　c meteorite　　d monument

6 The …………………… showed us how to dive under water.

a hero　　b interviewer　　c instructor　　d inventor

6- Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1 I'm not sure where Tarek is. Perhaps he's in the park. (might)

I'm not sure where Tarek is. He might be in the park

2 Do you have as much water as you need? (enough)

Do you have enough water?

3 I didn't recognise your cousin so I didn't say hello. (if)

If I had recognised your cousin, I would have said hello.

8.Write a paragraph of seven (7) sentences on one of the following

- a visit to the Red Sea
- an animal that you like

Practice Test 6b

1-Finish the following dialogue:

Fawzy and Mazin are speaking about a dangerous hobby.

Fawzy : Look at this photograph in the magazine: A man is standing on top of a very tall building.

Mazin : Really?.(1)... **Why is he doing that?**

Fawzy : The magazine says it's his hobby

Mazin : (2) **He shouldn't do that/be there. It's dangerous**

Fawzy : I couldn't agree with you more. The police should stop him.

Mazin : (3) **What else does it say** ?

Fawzy : It also says that the police arrested him

Mazin : (4) **Oh dear**

2-Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1 Your parents say that they are taking you to the beach tomorrow.

Great!/I can't wait!/I'm looking forward to that.

2 You see people leaving rubbish on a beac

How terrible! Why do they do this?

3 A friend tells you that you have won a prize.

Really? I can't believe it!/How wonderful!

3-Read the following, then answer the questions:

Hi Osama,

You told me to ask my father what problems he had had in his life. He said that when he was 20, he had an accident in the desert when he had driven all night. When he was 24, someone took all his money when he travelled to London. If he hadn't travelled to Brazil when he was 30, he wouldn't have been bitten by a snake and spent a day in hospital! So I asked him if he wished he hadn't done **these things**. "No, I don't regret anything!" he said. "Remember that it is not what you do that you regret, but what you don't do." I will remember that advice. Tell me what your father says!

Best wishes,

Karim

1 Where did Karim's father have an accident?

He had an accident when he was in the desert.

2 Did many good or many bad things happen to his father? **Many bad things happened to him.**

3 Do you agree with his father's advice? Why? / Why not?

Yes, because it is best to try doing things even if they are not always successful.

4 What do you think the word bitten means?

a. cut into by teeth b. followed c. frightened d. hit

5 What do the underlined words these things refer to?

a. his travelling b. boring events c. different places d. hospitals

C. The Reader

4 a. Match column A with column B:

	A		B
1-	Jerry and his family	a.	stopped working because the vet said he broke his leg.
2-	Black Beauty	b.	decided to sell Black Beauty
3-	Joe Green	c.	recognised Black Beauty from his white foot and white star..
4-	Skinner	d.	become healthy again after Mr Thoroughgood and his grandson looked after him.
	1-e 2-d 3-c 4-b	e.	moved to a cottage so that they could work for Mrs Fowler.

b. Answer the following questions:

1 Why do you think that Jerry became ill?

He had to wait outside the house of a rich man and it was very cold.

2 Why do you think that Black Beauty was worried when Jerry found work with Mrs Fowler?

Because he was becoming old and he knew that he might have more diffcult work to do in the future.

3 Who was Skinner and why was he a bad owner?

He was a taxi driver . He was a bad owner because he worked seven days a week and never gave his horses a good rest or enough to eat

4 What happened when Black Beauty tried to pull the carriage up a hill?

e fell onto the ground and thought that he was going to die.

5 Why didn't Black Beauty recognise Joe Green at frst?

because he was now a tall, strong man

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 If Leila had more free time, she ………………. read more books in English.

a would b would have c will d must

2 If I ………………. that he was famous, I would have taken a photograph of him.

a knew b know **c had known** d was knowing

3 What ………………. before you played tennis?

a you eat b you ate c you had eaten **d had you eaten**

4 How many eggs do the farmer's chickens ………………. each day?

a lie b give **c lay** d put

5 People have used ………………. to make cups for hundreds of years.

a stone **b clay** c straw d sticks

6 This book is………………. I don't want to read it any more.

a special b excellent **c terrible** d greedy

6 Rewrite the following using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. If I see Sayed, perhaps I'll ask him to help me with my homework. (might)

If I see Sayed, I might ask him to help me with my homework

2. can't wait to go to the museum tomorrow. (look forward)

I am looking forward to going to the museum tomorrow.

3. I was ill, so I didn't go to work. (If)

If I hadn't been ill/If I had been well, I would have gone to work

7-Write a paragraph of seven (7) sentences about one of the following:

- animals that lived in the past
- a story with a moral

Black Beauty

By Anna Sewell

Characters الشخصيات

People الاشخاص

1- Squire Gordon
The first owner who Black Beauty works for.



2- Joe Green
The boy who works for squire Gordon.



3- Earl Smythe
The first owner who Black Beauty works for.



4- Lady Smythe
Earl Smythe 's wife



5- Lady Anne
Earl Smythe 's daughter



6- York
A man who works for Earl Symthe.



7- Mr Barry
A businessman and he owns Black Beauty in Bath



8- Flicher
Mr.Barry helper.



9- Jerry Baker
A kind taxi driver in London



10- Polly
She's Jerry's wife.



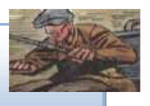
11- Harry and Dolly
Jerry's children.



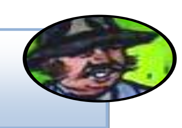
12- Mrs Flower
A wealthy woman who has a house in the country.



13- skinner
A taxi driver who buys Black Beauty



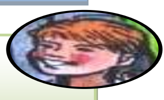
14- Mr. Thoroughgood
An old farmer.



15- Miss Blomefield
A woman who lives in the country with her two sisters.



16- Wille
Mr. Thoroughgood ' grandson.



Horses الخيول

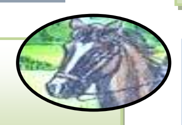
1- Black Beauty
The black horse who tells the story



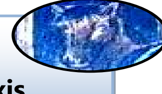
2- Ginger
Black Beauty 's Friend who had difficuilt past



3- Lizzie
A young horse at Earlshall park.

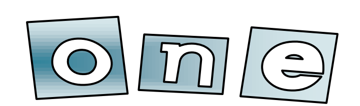


4- Captain
The horse who works with Beauty driving taxis.



Chapter 4 New owners

latest	احدث	reins	لجام	popular	محبوب
fashion	موضة	wounded	جروح	recovered	يتعافى
knees	ركبة	chatting	دردشة	Needs	يحتاج
hire	يؤجر	gentle	لطيف	behave	يتصرف
stone	حجر	complain	يشتكى	painful	مؤلم
energy	طاقة	exhausted	متعب	autumn	الخريف
carriage	عربة يجرها الخيول	worry	يقلق	true	حقيقى
steal	يسرق	rabbits	ارانب	arrest	يقبض على
sick	مريض	skin	بشرة	softly	بلطف
rough	قاسى	happen	يحدث	let	يدع

Earl Smythe's house at Earlshall Park was much bigger than Birtwick Park and more modern. The Earl's daughter, Lady Anne, liked to ride me around the park with her brother or cousins. I enjoyed these rides, which were sometimes with Ginger and sometimes with another young horse called Lizzie

كان منزل ايرل سمايث فى ايرلشال بارك اكبر بكثير و احدث من المنزل فى بيرتويك بارك. احبت الانسة أن ابنة ايرل امتطائى حول الحديقة اما مع شقيقها او ابناء اعمامها . لقد استمتعت بهذه الجولات و كانت بعض الاحيان مع جينجر و احيانا اخرى مع مهرة صغيرة تدعى ليزى

I was a popular horse with Earl Smythe's wife as well as his daughter, but Lady Smythe always used me to pull carriages. She liked the latest fashions, and one of these was for horses to use special reins. These kept the horses' heads high in the air all the time while they were pulling the carriages.

كنت محبوبا من زوجة ايرل و كذلك ابنته. و لكن كانت السيدة سمايث تستخدمنى دائما فى جر العربات و كانت تحب احدث صيحات الموضة و كانت احداها استخدام لجام خاص للخيول. و كان هذا اللجام يبقى رؤوس الخيول مثبتة لاعلى فى الهواء طوال الوقت اثناء جرهم للعربات.

"How wonderful they look!" the Lady said when she saw Ginger and me with our heads held high. But the reins were very uncomfortable and it was almost impossible to pull the carriage up a hill when you could not put your head down.

عندما رأتني السيدة سمايث انا و جينجر برؤوسنا مثبتة لاعلى قالت " كم تبدو رائعة هذه الخيول!" و لكن كان اللجام غير مريح اطلاقا و كان شبه مستحيل جر العربة لاعلى اي تل (مطلع) بدون خفض الرأس الى اسفل.

"If they do not tighten the reins more, I will do what they ask me," said Ginger. "I can see that this is a good home and that they are good people. But if they tighten them any more, there will be trouble."

قالت جينجر "اذا لم يحكموا شد اللجام اكثر سوف افعل ما يطلبوه مني فانا اري ان هذا منزل جيد و الناس به طيبيون و لكن اذا ضيقوا اللجام اكثر من ذلك فستحدث متاعب.

I did not like these reins at all, but Ginger and I continued to work hard. However, every day, they tightened the reins a little more. One day, we were both in a carriage together. The Lady decided that she wanted the reins to hold our heads up even higher. I could see that Ginger was not happy. Before she could tighten the reins, Ginger began to kick so hard that she fell to the ground. I fell too, and we both had to be cut from the carriage as soon as possible.

لم اكن احب هذا اللجام على الاطلاق ولكن واصلت انا و جينجر العمل بجد . و مع ذلك كانوا يضيقوا اللجام اكثر قليلا كل يوم. وذات يوم كنا نجر عربة معا و قررت السيدة سمايث ان تجعل اللجام يثبت رؤوسنا لاعلى اكثر مما كان عليه. لاحظت ان جينجر لم تكن سعيدة . و قبل ان تتمكن السيدة سمايث من تضييق اللجام بدات جينجر في الركل بقوة على الارض لدرجة انها سقطت على الارض و سقطت انا معها و كان يجب ان نفصل العربة باسرع وقت ممكن.

We were both hurt after the fall and we were taken home. Earl Smythe's helper, York, was angry about the special reins, but there was nothing he could do to stop Lady Smythe's love of fashion. He washed our wounds with hot water and it took a long time before we recovered.

كلانا اصيب بعد السقوط و تم اخذنا للمنزل و كان يورك مساعد ايرل سمايث غاضبا بخصوص اللجام الخاص و لكن لم يكن بيده شئ ليفعله ليوقف حب السيدة سمايث للموضة. قام يورك بغسل جروحنا بالماء الساخن و استغرق الامر وقتا طويلا حتى تعافينا .

Ginger and I were put in a field to recover, but my knees were badly damaged. We were not well enough to run as we used to do, so we spent a lot of time chatting. Then one day, the Earl came to see us with York.

تم وضعي انا وجينجر في حقل لنتعافي لكن ركبتي كانت قد اصيبتا اصابة بالغة لم نتعافي بما يكفي لنجري كما كنا نفعل من قبل لذلك قضينا الكثير من الوقت في الدردشة و ذات يوم جاء ايرل لرؤيتنا مع يورك.

"I spent good money on these horses," he said, "but if they cannot pull a carriage, we must sell them." "I know a man in Bath who needs a good horse," said York. "He looks after his horses well." "You should write to him, York," said the Earl. "We can still get good money for Black Beauty. I'm not so sure about Ginger." A week later, I was taken away from the field and said a quick goodbye

و قال ايرل ليورك " لقد انفقت اموالا كثيرة على هذين الحصانين و ان لم يتمكنا من جر العربة يجب ان نبيعهما ". فقال له يورك " انا اعرف رجلا في مدينة باث يحتاج الى حصان جيد و هو رجل يحسن رعاية الخيول". فرد عليه ايرل " يجب عليك ان تكتب له يا يورك لايزال بامكاننا الحصول على مبلغ مناسب مقابل بيع بلاك بيوتي لكنني غير متأكد من الامر نفسه مع جينجر ".

Questions and answers

1-In what ways was Earshall Park better than Birtwick Park ? — الى اى مدى كانت ايرشال بارك افضل من بيرتويك بارك؟

-It was bigger and more modern — كانت اكبر و احدث

2. Who was Lady "Anne" ? — من هى السيدة ان؟

-The Earl's daughter — ابنة الايريل

3.What did Anne like to do with her brother or cousins? — ماذا احبت ان تفعل مع اخاها و ابناء عمومتها؟

-To ride Beauty around the park. — ان تمتطى بلاك بيوتى حول الحديقة؟

4. Did Black Beauty like Anne's rides? — هل كان بلاك بيوتى يحب جولات ان؟

- Yes, Beauty enjoyed them — نعم ، كان يستمتع بها

5. What horses did Beauty enjoy the rides with ? — ما الخيول التى كان يستمتع معها بيوتى بالجولات؟

-With Ginger and sometimes with Lizzie — مع جينجر و احيانا ليزى

6. Who was Lizzie ? — من هو ليزى؟

- A young horse at Earlshall Park — حصان صغير فى ايرلشال بارك

7. How was Black Beauty at Earlshall Park ? — كيف كان بلاك بيوتى فى ايرلشال بارك؟

- He was a popular horse with Earl Smythe's wife as well as his daughter. — كان محبوبا من زوجة اريل و ابنته

8. What did Lady Smythe use Black Beauty to do ? — فيما استخدمت السيدة سميذ بلاك بيوتى؟

- To pull carriages. — فى سحب العربات

9. Why did Lady Smythe use special reins to keep horses neads held high ? — لماذا استخدمت السيدة سيمذ اللجام الخاص لتجعل رؤس الخيول عالية؟

- Because it was the latest fashion — لانها كانت احدث الموضات

10-What was the problem with the reins that Lady Smythe wanted the horses to wear ? — ما مشكلة اللجام الذى ارادت السيدة سميذ ان ترتديه الخيول

They were very uncomfortable and it was difficult to pull a carriage up a hill with them on. — كانوا غير مريحين و كان من الصعب جر العربة اعل تل اثناء ارتدائهم

11-What was Lady Smythe's opinion about the reins ? — ماذا كان راى السيدة سيميذ بشان اللجام؟

-She thought they were wonderful — كانت تعتقد انهم رائعين

12-Did Ginger and Beauty like the reins ? Why ? — هل احب جينير و بلاك بيوتى اللجام؟

No, because they were uncomfortable — لا لانهم كاموا غير مرحين

13-Why was it difficult for the horses to pull a carriage up a hill ?
هل كان من الصعب على الخيول ان تجر العربة اعلى التل؟

-Because they couldn't put their heads down when they were wearing the reins.
لانهم كان لا يمكنهم ان ينزلوا رؤسهم اثناء ارتدائهم للجام.

14. What did Ginger decide to do if they don't tighten the reins more ?
ماذا قررت جينجر ان تفعل لو انهم لم يحكموا اللجام اكثر؟

- She will do what they asked her.
انها سوف تفعل ما يطلبونه منها

15. Did Beauty and Ginger stop working because of the reins ?
هل توقف بيوتى و جينجر عن العمل بسبب اللجام

- No, they continued to work hard.
لا و استمروا فى العمل بجد

16. Why did Ginger begin to kick ?
لماذا بدأت جينجر تركل؟

- Because Lady Smythe wanted the reins to hold her head up even higher.
لان السيدة سميذ ارادت ان ترفع راسها باللحام اكثر علوا

17. How hard did Ginger kick ?
الى اى مدى ركلت جينجر؟

- She kicked so hard that she fell to the ground and Beauty fell, too.
بشدة بالغة لدرجة انها سقطت على الارض و سقط بيوتى ايضا

18-What happened to Ginger and Beauty after Ginger began to kick ?
ماذا حدث لجينجر و بيوتى بعد ان بدات جينجر فى الركل؟

- They fell to the ground and had to be cut from the carriage.
سقطت على الارض و كان عليهما ان ينفصلا عن العربة.

19. What was York's opinion about the special reins ?
ماذا كان رأى يورك بشان الانواع الخاصة من اللجام؟

- He was angry about these reins
كان غاضبا بشان اللجام.

20. What did York do with Ginger and Black Beauty when they fell and were hurt ?
ماذا فعل يورك مع جينجر وبلاك بيوتى عندما سقطا و اصيبا

-He washed their wounds with hot water.
نظف جرحهم بالماء الساخن.

21. Where were Beauty and Ginger put to recover?
اين وضع كلا من بيوتى و جينجر ليتعافيا؟

-In a field
فى حقل

22. What happened to Beauty's knees ?
ماذا حدث لركب بيوتى؟

-They were badly damaged
اصيبوا بشكل سئ

23. How were Ginger and Beauty at the field after the fall ?
كيف كانا جينجر و بيوتى فى الحقل بعد السقوط؟

-They were not well to run as they used to do
لم يكونوا قادرين على الجرى كما اعتادوا

- They spent a lot of time chatting
قضوا وقتا كثيرا فى الدردشة.

24. What did Earl Smythe decide to do when he visited Ginger and Beauty at the field?
ماذا قرر الايرل سميذ ان يفعل عندما زار جينجر و بيوتى فى الحقل؟

- He decided to sell them.
قرر بيعهم

25-Why did the Earl Smythe decide to sell the horses ?
لماذا قرر بيع الخيول؟

-Because they were hurt and couldn't pull carriages anymore.
لانهم اصيبوا و لن يستطيعوا جر العربات ثانيا

26. What did Earl Smythe think about Ginger and Black Beauty when he decided to sell them ?
ماذا كان رايه عندما قرر بيعهم ؟

- He thought that he could still get good money for Black Beauty, but he wasn't sure about Ginger.

كان يرى ان قادر على ان يحصل على اموال جيدة مقابل بيوتى لكنه غير متاكد بالنسبة لجينجر.

Critical thinking questions and answers

1- Do you think that Ginger was right to start to kick? Why /Why not?	هل تعتقد ان جينجر كانت محقة فى الركل؟
Yes, because she was very uncomfortable No, she should hove worked hard like Black Beauty.	نعم لانها كانت غير مرتاحة لا كان يجب ان تعمل بجد مثل بيوتى
2-Do you think that Black Beauty was angry with Ginger because he was hurt?Why / Why not?	هل تعتقد ان بيوتى غضب من جينجر لانه اصيب؟
No, because he realised that Ginger only did this because the reins were uncomfortable,	لا لانه ادرك ان جينجر فعلت ذلك لان اللجام كان غير مريح
3- Why do you think that the horses had to be cut from the carriage as soon as possible?	لماذا تعتقد ان الحصانين كان يجب فصلهما عن العربة باسرع ما يمكن؟
Because their wounds could become worse.	لان جراحهما كانت ستزداد سوءا
4- Why do you think that Eart Smythe said that he might not get much money for Ginger?	لماذا تعتقد ان ايرل سميث قال انه ربما لا يحصل على مبلغ مناسب مقابل جينجر؟
Because Ginger was hurt. She also does not always do what her owners want.	لان جينجر كانت مصابة و كانت لاتفعل دائما ماير يده اصحابها
5- Why do you think Black Beauty was surprised that Lady Smythe made him pull a carriage although she liked him?	لماذا تعتقد ان بوتى كان مندهش من ان السيدة سميث كانت تحبه و مع ذلك كانت تستخدمه فى جر الحنطور؟
Because rich people didn't often use the horses they Liked in such hard work.	لان الاغنياء كانوا غالبا لا يستخدمون الخيول التى يحبونها فى مثل هذه الاعمال الشاقة



1- Match column A with column B:

	A		B
1-	Black Beauty	a.	was a young horse
2-	The Earl Smythe	b.	was the horse Lady Anne liked to ride
3-	York	c.	kicked so hard
4-	Lizzie	d.	said, "I spent good money on these horses."
		e.	was Eart Smythe's helper.

B- Answer the following questions:

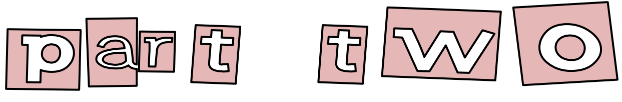
1- How was Earlshall Park different from Birtwick Park?
2- Why did Lady Smythe use special reins to keep the horses' heads held high?
3-Why was it very difficult for the horses to pull the carriage up a hill?
4- Why do you think that the horses had to be cut from the carriage as soon as possible?
5- Do you think that Ginger was right to start to kick? Why / Why not?

I- Match column A with column B:

A		B	
1-	Ginger	a.	decided that the horses' heads should be higher
2-	Black Beauty and Ginger	b.	wasn't sure about selling Ginger for good money
3-	Lady Smythe	c.	began to play in the field.
4-	The Earl Smythe	d.	moved to Earlshall Park.
		e.	began to kick in the carriage.

B- Answer the following questions:

1- Who liked to ride Black Beauty around the park?
2- How did Ginger and Black Beauty become hurt?
3- How did Black Beauty get to Bath?
4- Do you think that Black Beauty was angry with Ginger after the accident? Why / Why not?
5- Why do you think that Earl Smythe said that he might not get much money for Ginger?



A week later, I was taken away from the field and said a quick goodbye to Ginger. I was taken in a train to the town of Bath. It was my first journey on a train, but the experience was not a bad one.

بعد اسبوع تم اخذى بعيدا عن الحقل وودعت جنيجر وداع سريع. ثم اخذت في قطار الى مدينة باث و كانت اول رحلة لي بالقطار و لكنها لم تكن تجربة سيئة.

My new owner lived in a small house in the town, and he had many horses. People could hire the horses for a day. This meant that many of them were not good drivers. I was a gentle horse, so my new owner often let bad drivers take me because he knew I would behave well.

كان مالكي الجديد يعيش في منزل صغير في المدينة و كان يملك الكثير من الخيول و كان من الممكن ان تستاجر الخيول ليوم واحد . و هذا يعني ان اغلب من يستاجروا الخيول لو يكونوا سائقين ماهرين كنت حصانا لطيفا لذا كان يسمح مالكي الجديد في كثير من الاحيان ان ياخذني سائقين سيئين لانه كان يعرف انني ساتصرف بطريقة جيدة.

Some of these riders pulled the reins so hard that it hurt my mouth. Some did not use the reins at all, so that I did not know what to do. Others did not understand that a horse cannot work when it has a stone in its foot. One driver complained that he had hired a bad horse because I could not walk very fast. Te stone in my foot was very painful and it was very difcult for me to get home again.

بعض هؤلاء السائقين كانوا يشدوا اللجام بقوة لدرجة ان فمي اصيب. و على الجانب الاخر لم يستخدم بعضهم اللجام على الاطلاق حتى انني لم اكن اعرف ما يجب القيام به. لم يفهم اخرون ان الحصان لا يمكن ان يعمل عندما يكون هناك حجر في قدمه. حيث اشتكى احد السائقين انه استاجر حصان سئ لانني لم استطع المشي بسرعة كبيرة . كان الحجر يؤلم قدمي للغاية و كنت اواجه صعوبة في العودة الى المنزل مرة اخرى.

However, there were also good drivers in Bath. One of these liked me so much that he asked my owner if his friend could buy me, and soon I had another new owner. His name was Mr Barry. He was a businessman who had little exercise and his doctor advised him to ride a horse to keep him healthy. He had a helper called Filcher to look after me and bought me the best food he could fnd. Filcher was good to me and for a time I was happy. I did not know then that my life was not going to be happy for long

و مع ذلك كان هناك ايضا سائقون ماهرون في مدينة باث . و أحد هؤلاء السائقين احبني جدا لدرجة انه سأل مالكي ان كان يمكن لصديقه ان يشتريني و سرعان ما كان لي مالك جديد و كان اسمه السيد باري . كان رجل اعمال و كان يمارس القليل من التمارين الرياضية و نصحه الاطباء بركوب حصان ليحافظ على صحته. و كان له مساعد يدعى فليتشر و كانت وظيفته رعايتي و ان يشتري لي افضل الطعام . كان فيلتشر يحسن معاملتي و كنت سعيدا لبعض الوقت . لم اكن اعرف ان ذلك لن يدوم طويلا .

Filcher began to give me less food each week and I became hungry. I had less energy and started to feel exhausted all the time. When Mr Barry visited a farmer friend in the country, the friend said, "Your horse does not look the same. Has it been ill?"

بدأ فيلتشر في اعطائي كمية اقل من الطعام كل اسبوع و اصبحت جائعا . قلت طاقتي و بدات اشعر بالارهاق طوال الوقت و عندما زار السيد باري احد الاصدقاء المزارعين في الريف سأله " لا يبدو حصانك بخير هل هو مريضا ؟"

"No, but Filcher told me that horses often have less energy in the autumn and that it's nothing to worry about," Mr Barry replied. "That's not true!" cried the farmer. "If you buy good food for this horse, then it isn't eating it. Something else is! I suggest that you give this horse some good food for the next few weeks! And I advise you to watch your helper. There are some men who will steal food even from an animal."

اجاب السيد باري " لا لكن فيلتشر اخبرني ان الخيول غالبا ما تقل طاقتها في الخريف و لا داعي للقلق". رد السيد باري "هذا ليس صحيحا اذا كنت تشتري طعاما جيدا لهذا الحصان فإنه لا ياكله لكن شئ اخر يحدث ! اقترح ان تقدم لهذا الحصان بعض الطعام الجيد خلال الاسابيع القليلة القادمة و انصحك بمراقبة مساعدك فهناك بعض الرجال الذين يسرقون الطعام حتى لو كان طعام حيوان."

Of course I knew what happened to my food. Filcher put most of it into a basket and took it home. His family kept rabbits which they sold at the market, and my food was given to them. Mr Barry called the police after this, and they later arrested Filcher. Tis experience made Mr Barry feel bad, and he decided to sell me.

بالطبع كنت اعرف ما حدث لطعامى. كان فيلتشر يضع معظمه فى سلة و ياخذها للمنزل . كانت عائلته تربى ارانب و كانوا يبيعونها فى السوق و كان طعامى يقدم لهم استدعى بارى الشرطة و قبضوا علي فيلتشر جعلت هذه التجربة السيد بارى يشعر بانزعاج و قرر ان يبيعنى

I was taken to a market for horses. There were horses there of all shapes and sizes; some were tall and strong, others were old and sick. It worried me to see some of the horses who looked very thin. Would I be like that one day?

اقتادونى لسوق للخيول كانت هناك خيول من جميع الاشكال و الاحجام كان بعضا طويل القامة و قوى و البعض الاخر عجوز و مريض شعرت بالقلق عندما رايت بعض الخيول النحيفة جدا و تسالت هل ساكون مثلهم يوما ؟

I stood with three other strong-looking horses and many people came to look at us. The men who thought about buying me opened my mouth, looked in my eyes and felt my skin. Many of them saw that my knees were damaged and some were rough with me. There was one man, however, who felt my legs gently and spoke softly. I liked him and hoped he would buy me. "I think we'll be good for each other," he said. He paid twenty-four pounds and I had another new owner.

و قفت مع ثلاثة خيول اخرى قوية البنية و جاء الكثير من الناس للنظر الينا . قام الرجال الذين هموا بشرائى بفتح فمى و النظر فى عيناى و تحسس بشرتى . لاحظ العديد منهم ان ركبتى كانتا مصابتان و عاملنى عضهم بقسوة. ومع ذلك كان هناك رجل تحسس ساقى برفق و تحدث بهدوء. فاجبته و تمنيت ان يشترينى. قال الرجل اعتقد اننا سنكون مناسبين لبعض و دفع اربعة و عشرين جنيها و اصبح لدى مالك جديد .

Questions and answers

1. Where was Black Beauty taken after a week of Earl Smythe's visit at the field ?
الى اين اخذ بيوتى بعد اسبوع من زيارة الايرل للحقل؟
- To the town of "Bath"
الى مدينة باث

2. How was Black Beauty taken to the town of "Bath" ?
كيف اخذ بيوتى الى باث؟
- On a train.
بالقطار

3. Why was Beauty taken to Bath ?
لماذ اخذ بيوتى الى باث
- To be sold to a new owner.
ليتم بيعه لمالك جديد

4. Where did the first new owner in Bath live ?
اين كان يعيش المالك الجديد فى باث
- He lived in a small house.
فى منزل صغير

5. What did the first new owner do with the horses he had ?
ماذا كان يفعل المالك الجديد مع الخيول التى يمتلكها؟

-He hired them to people. كان يؤجرهم للناس

6. How long did people hire the horses ? Why ? كم اكنت المدة التى كان الناس يستاجرون فيها اليول؟ و لماذ؟

-For one day, because many of them were not good drivers. لمدة يوم لان العديد منهم لم يكونوا سائقين جيدين.

7. Why did Beauty's first new owner let bad drivers take Black Beauty ? لماذا سمح للسائقين السيئين باخذ بيوتى؟

- Because he was a gentle horse and he knew that Beauty would behave well. لانه كان حصان لطيف كان يعرف ان بيوتى سيتصرف بطريقة جيدة

8. What were Beauty's problems with bad riders ? ماذا كانت مشاكل بيوتى مع السائقين الغير جيدين؟

a. Some of these riders pulled the reins so hard that they hurt Beauty's mouth, أ- بعضهم كان يجر اللجام بشدة مما يؤذى فم بيوتى

b. Some riders didn't use the reins at all, so that Beauty did not know what to do. ب- بعض السائقين لا يستخدموت اللجام على الاطلاق لدرجة ان بيوتى لم يكن يعرف كيف يتصرف.

c. Others didn't understand that a horse cannot work with a stone in its foot. ج- بعضهم لا يفهم ان الحصان لا يمكنه ان يعمل عندما يكون هناك حجرا بقدمه.

9. Who was the new other owner in Bath ? من كان المالك الاخر الجديد فى باث؟

-Mr Barry. السيد بارى

10. Who was Mr Barry ? من هو السيد بارى

- He was a businessman and Beauty's new owner in Bath. رجل اعمال و المالك الخديد لبيوتى فى باث.

11.Why did Mr Barry's doctor advise him to ride a horse ? لماذا نصحه طبيبه ان يركب حصان؟

-To keep him healthy. ليحافظ على صحته.

12. Who was Filcher ? من هو فيلتشر؟

- Mr Barry's helper who looked after Beauty. مساعد باري الذى يعتنى ب بيوتى

13-What happened to Black Beauty's food ? ماذا حدث لطعام بيوتى؟

- Filcher gave it to his rabbits. اعطاه فيلتشر للارانب الخاصة به.

14. What happened to Black Beauty when Filcher gave him less food each week ? ماذا حدث لبيوتى عندما اعطاه فيلتشر طعام اقل كل اسبوع؟

- He became hungry. - اصبح جائعا

- He had less energy. - قلت طاقته

- He started to feel exhausted all the time. - بدأ يشعر بالارهاق كل الوقت

15.Why is it important to look after working animals carefully ? لماذا من المهم ان نهتم بالحيوانات العاملة بعناية؟

- Because they work much better when they are given food and are looked after well. لانهم يعملون بشكل افضل عندما يعطوا طعاما و يعتنى بهم جيدا

16. What did Filcher tell Mr Barry about Black Beauty when he looked tired ماذا اخبر فيلتشر السيد بارى عن بيوتى عندما بدا عليه التعب؟

- He told him that horses often have less energy in the autumn. اخبره ان الخيول غالبا تقل طاقتها فى فصل الخريف.

17. What did the farmer (Barry's friend) suggest Mr Barry to do ? ماذا اقترح الفلاح على السيد بارى ان يفعل؟

-To watch his helper "Filcher". ان يراقب مساعده فيلتشر

18. What happened to Filcher ? ماذا حدث لفيلتشر

- Mr Barry called the police and they arrested Filcher. طلب السيد بارى الشرطة و تم القبض عليه.

19.Why did Mr Barry sell Black Beauty ? لماذا باع بارى بيوتى؟

- Because he felt bad after Black Beauty didn't have enough to eat and after the police arrested Filcher.
لانه احس بسوء بعد عدم حصول بيوتى على الطعام الكافى و بعد ان قبضت الشرطة على فيلتشر

20. Where was Black Beauty taken in order to be sold ?
اين اخذ بيوتى ليتم بيعه؟

-To a market for horses.
لسوق لبيع الخيول.

21. What were there at the market ?
ما الذى كان يوجد فى السوق؟

-There were horses of all shapes and sizes.
خيول بكل الاشكال و الاحجام

22. What made Beauty worried at the horses market ?
ما الذى جعل بيوتى قلقا فى سوق الخيول؟

- When he saw some horses that looked very thin.
عندما رأى بعض الخيول تبدو نحيفة.

23- What did the men who thought about buying Beauty at the market do ?
ماذا فعل الرجال الذين فكروا فى شراء بيوتى؟

-They opened Beauty's mouth and looked in his eyes and felt his skin.
- فتحوا فمه و نظروا فى عينيه و تحسسوا بشرته.

- Some of them were rough with him.
- بعضهم كانوا قساه

24. Who bought Black Beauty at the market for horses ?
من اشترى بيوتى فى سوق الخيول؟

- A man who felt his legs gently and spoke softly.
رجل لمس قدميه بلطف و تحدث بحنان اليه

25. How much money did the kind man pay for Beauty?
كم دفع الرجل مقابل بيوتى؟

-Twenty four pounds.
اربعة و عشرون جنيها

Critical thinking questions and answers

1- Why do you inink many peopLe hired horses instead of buying them?
لماذا فى رأيك كان يؤجر كثير من الناس الخيول بدلا من شرائها؟

I think most of them didn't have enough money to buy a horse.
لم يكن لديهم المال الكافى لشراء حصان

2- Why do you think many of the drivers weren't good drivers?
لماذا تعتقد ان معظم السائقين غير ماهرين؟

Because they could hire a horse for only a day so there wasn't much time to practise well.
لانهم كانوا يستأجرون الحصان ليوم واحد فقط لذا لم يكم لديهم الوقت الكافى للتمرين جيدا

3-Do you think Filcher deserved to be arrested? Why?
هل تعتقد ان فيلتشر كان يستحق القبض عليه؟ و لماذا؟

Yes, I do. Because he was not a good man and only thought about himself and his family, not about Black Beauty.
نعم لانه لم يكن رجلا طيبا و فكر فقط فى نفسه و اسرته و ليس فى بيوتى

4- Why do you think Filcher lied to Mr Barry?
لماذا كذب فيلتشر على السيد بارى؟

Because he stole Black Beauty's food and he didn't want Mr Barry to know the truth.
لانهم سرق طعام بيوتى و كان لايريد ان يعرف السيد بارى الحقيقة.

5- Why do you think Mr Barry believed what Filcher said about Black Beauty?
لماذا تعتقد ان بارى صدق فيلتشر؟

Because Mr Barry wos a businessman and he didn't know much about horses.
لانه كان رجل اعمال و لا يعرف الكثير عن الخيول.

6- Do you think that Black Beauty was lucky that Mr Barry visited his friend? Why?
هل تعتقد ان بيوتى كان محظوظا بزيارة بارى لصديقه؟

Yes, I do. Because if Mr Barry didn't visit his friend, he wouldn't know anything about stealing Black Beauty's food.
نعم لانه لو لم يزر بارى صديقه لما علم بخصوص سرقة الطعام.

7- What do you think Mr Barry should have done when Black Beauty wasn't well?
ماذا تعتقد كان على السيد بارى فعله عندما علم بمرض بيوتى؟



I- Match column A with column B:

A		B	
1-	Mr Barry	a.	gave Black Beauty less food each week.
2-	Black Beauty	b.	started to feel exhausted all the time
3-	Mr Barry's friend	c.	rode a horse to keep him healthy.
4-	Filcher	d.	rode Black Beauty around the park
		e.	suggested buying good food for Black Beauty for a few weeks,

B- Answer the following questions:

1-Who was Filcher?
2- Why did Mr Barry's doctor advise him to ride a horse?
3- Describe the horses that Black Beauty saw at the market.
4- Do you think Filcher deserved to be arrested? Why?
5- Why do you think Mr Barry believed what Filcher said about Black Beauty?

I- Match column A with column B:

A		B	
1-	Lady Anne	a.	was put in a field to recover
2-	EarlSmythe's wife	b.	knees were badly damaged
3-	Ginger	c.	was put in o train to recover
4-	Black Beauty's	d.	was the Earl's daughter.
		e.	wanted the reins to hold the horses' heads up even higher

B- Answer the following questions:

1-Who was York?
2- How did York help the horses after the fall?
3- Why did the Eart decide to sell the horses?
4-Do you think that Black Beauty was angry with Ginger because he was hurt? Why/ Why not?
5- Why do you think Black Beauty was surprised that Lady Smythe liked him although she used him to pull a carriage?

Chapter 5 The life of a taxi driver

towards	تجاه	finally	اخيرا	comfortable	مريح
stable	اسطبل	handsome	وسيم	business	عمل
trust	يثق في	aged	يبلغ من العمر	soon	قريبا
extra	اضافي	Usual speed	سرعة معتادة	Light pull	شدة بسيطة
among	بين	common	شائع	own	يمتلك
cough	يسعل (يكح)	wealthy	ثري	remind	يذكر
poor	فقير	sir	سيد	angrily	بغضب



My new owner gave me food before he rode me for many kilometres towards London. It was getting dark and the lights were on in the streets when we arrived in the big city. There were streets to the left and streets to the right and I thought we would never arrive. Finally, however, my owner gave a call and a door opened in a small house. A woman and two children ran out.

قدم لي مالكي الجديد الطعام قبل ان يمتطيني لعدة كيلومترات نحو لندن. بدأ يحل الظلام و كانت الاضواء منارة في الشوارع عندما وصلنا الي المدينة الكبيرة . كانت هناك شوارع علي اليسار و شوارع علي اليمين و اعتقدت اننا لن نصل ابدا و اخيرا و مع ذلك نادي مالكي و فتح باب في منزل صغير و خرج منه امرأة و طفلين مسرعين.

"Is he gentle, father?" called the girl. "Yes, he's as gentle as you are. Come and say hello!" he said. "Let me get him some food and water," said the woman, and I was taken into a comfortable stable. "I think I'll be happy here," I thought.

و سألت الفتاة الاب عني " هل هو لطيف يا ابي؟" و اجاب الاب " نعم انه لطيف مثلك تماما . تعال و رحب به" قالت السيدة " دعني احضر له بعض الطعام و الماء" و اقتادوني الي اسطبل مريح. فكرت قائلا " اعتقد انني ساكون سعيدا هنا".

My new owners were called Jerry and Polly, and their children were Harry and Dolly, who were aged twelve and eight. They were all very happy people. Jerry owned a taxi carriage and another horse called Captain. The next day, Captain went out with the taxi carriage in the morning, then it was my turn in the afternoon.

ملاكي الجدد كانوا يدعون جيري و بولي و اطفالهم كانوا هاري و عمره اثني عشر عاما و دوللي و عمرها ثمانية اعوام و كانوا جميعا سعداء للغاية. و كان جيري يملك عربة حنطور اجرة وحصانا اخر اسمه كابتن في اليوم التالي خرج كابتن مع الحنطور الاجرة في الصباح ثم كان دوري في فترة ما بعد الظهر .

Jerry was a very good driver and was very kind to me. He took me to a wide street where there were big houses and shops flled with food. There were many other taxis outside the shops, waiting for passengers. The other drivers said hello to Jerry and then came to look at me. "He's too handsome to pull a taxi!" said one. "Well," said Jerry, "I'll soon find out, won't I?"

كان جيرى سائق ماهر جدا و كان عطوفا جدا معى. قادنى الى شارع واسع حيث كانت هناك منازل كبيرة و محلات مليئة بالطعام . كان هناك العديد من عربات الحنطور الاجرة الاخرى خارج المحلات التجارية فى انتظار الركاب. عندما رأى السائقون جيرى رحبوا به ثم جاؤوا لينظروا الى. قال احدهم مستنكرا " انه جميل جدا لجر عربة حنطور اجرة" . قال قال جيرى " حسنا ساعرف قريبا اليس كذلك؟"

Then the owner of the taxi business came over, a tall man called Mr Grant. He studied me as if he wanted to buy me, then he said, "He's a good horse. He will do well for you, Jerry."

ثم جاء صاحب تجارة تاجير الحنطور الاجرة و كان رجل طويل القامة يدعى السيد جرانت حيث تفحصنى كما لو كان يريد شرائى ثم قال " انه حصان جيد سوف يحسن صنعا لك يا جيرى"

The first few days of pulling a taxi were difficult. I did not find it easy in London. There was so much noise and so many people. It was difficult to find my way between all the other carriages, but in time, I began to trust Jerry and I stopped worrying. At the end of the day, I was given good food and fresh water. Harry always helped to look after me and worked as hard as a much older boy, and Polly and Dolly also came to see me often. Jerry was the best owner I have had

كانت الايام القليلة الاولى من جر الحنطور الاجرة صعبة . فلم اجد الوضع سهلا فى لندن. كان هناك الكثير من الصخب و الكثير من الناس كان من الصعب ان اشق طريقى بين العربات الاخرى و لكن بمرور الوقت بدأت اثق فى جيرى و توقفت عن القلق و فى نهاية اليوم كانوا يقدموا لى الطعام الجيد و المياه العزبة كان هارى يساعد دائما فى الاعتناء بى و عمل بجد كما لو كان صبى كبير. و كانت بولى و دوللى ياتيان لرؤيتى فى كثير من الاحيان . كان جيرى افضل من امتلكنى.

Jerry was always kind to me, but he was not always happy with his passengers. One day, two young men came out of a hotel and called him over. "Hey, taxi driver. We're late for our train. Go as quickly as you can so we can catch the one o'clock train. We will give you an extra pound," said one of them. "I will take you, but only at our usual speed," said Jerry.

كان جيرى دائما عطوف معى لكنه لم يكن سعيدا دائما مع الركاب. و فى من الايام خرج رجلان من فندق و ناديا على جيرى. و قال احدهما لجيرى " ايها السائق نحن متاخرون على قطارنا اذهب باسرع ما يمكن حتى نتمكن من اللحاق بقطار الساعة الواحدة و سنعطيك جنية اضافى". فرد جيرى " سانقلكم و لكن بسرعتنا المعتادة

Another taxi driver heard him and called out, "I'll go fast for you! He won't go fast because he loves his horse!" The men laughed and jumped into the other taxi. "I must always think about my horse," said Jerry. "A pound won't help if it makes my horse too tired to take other passengers for the rest of the day."

". سمع سائق اخر و صاح " ساوصلكما بسرعة لان جيرى لن يذهب بسرعة لانه يحب حصانه" ضحك الرجال و ركبوا الحنطور الاخر . قال جيرى " لابد ان افكر دائما فى حصانى فالجنية لن يفيد اذا جعل حصانى متعبا لدرجة تجعله لا يستطيع توصيل ركاب اخرين لبقية اليوم".

Jerry was a very good driver and with a light pull of the reins he drove me carefully among the carriages, horses, people and taxis that filled the streets, some going one way, some the other. I always felt safe, because I trusted Jerry.

كان جيرى سائق ماهر جدا و كان يسحب اللجام برفق ليقودنى بعناية بين العربات و الخيول و الناس و عربات الحنطور الاجرة التى تملا الشوارع حيث كان يسير بعضهم فى اتجاه و البعض الاخر فى الاتجاه المعاكس و كنت اشعر دائما بالامان لاننى وثقت فى جيرى.

Holidays were not common for taxi drivers. Many of the taxi drivers did not own their horses, but hired them each day. That meant they had to work very long hours without a rest to get enough money. Some of them were not like Jerry and always had to work for seven days a week. I felt sorry for both the horses and their drivers.

لم تكن الراحة فى العطلات معتادة لسائقى الحنطور الاجرة. حيث لم يمتلك اغلبهم خيولا و كانوا يستاجروها يوميا و هذا يعنى انهم كانوا يضطروا للعمل لساعات طويلة جدا دون راحة للحصول على مايكفى من المال. لم يكن بعضهم مثل جيرى حيث كانوا يضطرون ان يعملوا سبعة ايام اسبوعيا شعرت بالاسى لكل من الخيول و سائقيها.

Questions and answers

1. Where did Jerry take Black Beauty to ?
الى اين اخذ جيرى بيوتى؟

-To London.
الى مدينة لندن

2. How was the big city (London) when Beauty and his new owner arrived ?
كيف كانت لندن عندما وصل بيوتى و المالك الجديد

- It was getting dark and the lights were on in the streets.
كان قد حل الظلام و الانوار كانت مضاءة فى الشوارع

3. Who was Jerry ?
من هو جيرى؟

-The new owner of Beauty and a taxi driver.
المالك الجديد و سائق عربة اجرة

4. Who was Polly ?
من هى بولى

- Jerry's wife.
زوجة جيرى.

5. Who were Harry and Dolly ? من هما هارى و دوللى؟
- Jerry and Polly's children. هم ابناء جيرى و بولى.
6. What did Polly do when Beauty arrived ? ماذا فعلت بولى عندما وصل بيوتى؟
- She got Beauty some food and water and took him into a comfortable stable, اعطت بيوتى بعض من الماء و الطعام و اخذته الى اسطبل مريح.
7. How was Jerry's family ? كيف كانت عائلة جيرى
-They were happy people. كانوا سعداء
8. What did Jerry own ? ماذا كان يمتلك جيرى؟
- A taxi carriage and another horse called Captain. عربة اجرة و حصان يدعى كابتن.
9. What were Captain and Beauty doing at Mr Jerry's ? ماذا كان يفعل كابتن و بيوتى لجيرى؟
- Captain went out with the taxi carriage in the morning, then it was Beauty's turn in the afternoon. كان كابتن يجر العربة فى الصباح و بيوتى بعد الظهر
10. What was Jerry like ? كيف كان جيرى
-He was a very good driver and was very kind to Black Beauty. كان سائق ماهر و عطوف جدا على بيوتى.
11.How did Jerry describe Black Beauty to his daughter ? كيف وصف جيرى بيوتى لابنته
- He said that he was as gentle as she was. قال انه لطيف مثلها
12-What did Harry and Dolly do to help look after Black Beauty ? ماذا فعل هارى و دوللى ليعتنوا ببيوتى؟
-Harry always helped to look after him and Dolly came to see him Often, هارى كان يساعد فى الاعتناء به و دوللى تاتى لرؤيته دائما
13. What were there in the wide street where Jerry took Beauty to ? ماذا كان يوجد فى الشارع المتسع الذى اخذ جيرى بيوتى اليه؟
- There were big houses and shops filled with food. - كان هناك منازل كبيرة و محلات مملوءة بالطعام
-There were many other taxis outside the shops. - العديد من سيارات الاجرة خارج المحلات
14. Why were there many taxis outside the shops ? لماذا كانت هناك سيارات اجرة خارج المحلات؟
- To wait for the passengers. لتنتظر الركاب.
-15. Who was Mr Grant ? من هو السيد جرانت ؟
-The owner of the taxi business. مالك مشروع التاكسى
16. What did Mr Grant do when he saw Black Beauty ? ماذا فعل جرانت عندما رأى بيوتى؟
- He studied Beauty as if he wanted to buy him. فحصه كما لو كان يريد ان يشتريه.
17. What did Mr Grant say about Beauty? ماذا قال جرانت عن بيوتى؟
- He said that he was a good horse and he would do well for Jerry, انه حصان جيد و سيعمل بطريقة جيدة مع جيرى
18. How were the first few days of pulling a taxi for Black Beauty ? كيف كانت الايام القليلة الاولى فى جر العربة بالنسبة لبيوتى؟
-They were difficult. كانت صعبة
19.What did Black Beauty find difficult about living in London ? ماذا وجد بيوتى من صعوبات فى لندن؟
-There was a lot of noise and a lot of people and it was difficult for him to find his way between the carriages. كان هناك كثير من الضوضاء و الكثير من الناس و كان من الصعب عليه ان يسلك طريقه بين العربات
20.Why did Beauty stop worrying ? لماذا توقف بيوتى عن الشعور بالقلق؟
- Because he began to trust Jerry. لانه بدأ يثق بجيرى
21.What did Jerry give Beauty at the end of the day ? ماذا كان يعطى جيرى لبيوتى فى نهاية اليوم؟
-Good food and fresh water. طعام جيد و ماء عذب

22. Why did Black Beauty think that Jerry was the best owner he ever had
لماذا اعتقد بيوتى ان جيرى افضل مالك له على الاطلاق؟

-Because he gave Black Beauty good food and fresh water.
لانه اعطاه الماء العذب و الطعام الجيد

- He was kind to him as he was a good driver.
و كان عطوفا عليه كما انه كان سائقا جيدا

23. What was the problem with the two young men that came out of the hotel ?
ما مشكلة الشابان اللذان خرجا من الفندق؟

- They were late for their train.
كانوا متاخرين عن القطار.

24. What did the two young men want Jerry to do ?
ماذا ارادا الشابان من جيرى؟

-They wanted Jerry to go as quickly as he could to catch their train.
ارادوا ان يجعلوا جيرى يذهب باسرع ما يمكنه ليلحوا بقطارهم

25. What would the two young men give Jerry if he went quickly ?
ماذا كان الشابان سيعطيا جيرى اذا ذهب بسرعة؟

- They would give him an extra pound.
جنيها اضافيا

26. What was Jerry's answer to the two young men ?
ماذا كان رد جيرى للشابان؟

- He would take them, but at the usual speed.
انه سوف ياخذهم و لكن بالسرعة المعتادة.

27. Why didn't Jerry want to go fast?
لماذا لم يرد جيرى ان يذهب بسرعة؟

- Because he loves his horse and won't make his horse get tired.
لانه احب حصانه و لا يرد للحصان ان يشعر بالتعب.

28. How did Jerry drive Black Beauty ?
كيف كان جيرى يقود بيوتى؟

- He drove him carefully with a light pull of reins.
كان يقوده بعناية بسحب خفيف للجام.

29. Why did Beauty always feel safe with Jerry ?
لماذا كان يشعر بيوتى بالامان مع جيرى؟

- Because he trusted him.
لانه كان يثق به.

30. Why did Black Beauty feel sorry for some of the taxi drivers and their horses ?
لماذا كان يشعر بيوتى بالحزن تجاه بعض السائقين و خيولهم؟

- Because they had to work for very long hours to get enough money.
لانهم كانوا مضطرين للعمل لساعات طويلة ليحصلوا على المال الكافى

Critical thinking questions and answers

1-How easy do you think it was for people to travel around london at this time?
كيف كانت سهولة التنقل للناس فى كل انحاء لندن فى ذلك الوقت؟

It was probably quite difficult because there were no cars or buses. Only wealthy people could take a taxi or carriage because they were probably expensive.
كان امر صعب الى حد ما حيث لم يكن هناك سيارات او اوتوبيسات و كان الاغنياء فقط القادرين على اخذ حنطور اجرة

2. Why do you think that one of the taxi drivers said that Black Beauty was too handsome to do that job?
لماذا قال احد السائقين ان بيوتى كان جميلا على ان يعمل هذا العمل؟

He can see that Black Beauty is a strong, healthy horse. Perhaps thinks that he is too good to do hard, difficult work.
كان يرى ان بيوتى قوى و بصحة جيدة و ربما اعتقد انه حصان جيد لا يناسبه القيام بمثل هذا العمل الشاق و الصعب

3- Why do you think that Jerry took Captain to work on Beauty's first morning in London?
لماذا اخذ جيرى كابتن للعمل فى اول صباح لبيوتى فى لندن

I think he did not want Black Beauty to have a difficult first day.
لانه لم يكن ان يكون اول يوم صعب لبيوتى.

4-Why do you think Jerry bought Black Beauty although he had another horse?
لماذا اشترى جيرى بيوتى فى رأيك رغم انه لديه حصان اخر؟

Because he knew that his horse wasn't a machine and he needed rest so he would divide the work between them.

لانه يعرف ان الحصان ليس ألة و انه يحتاج للراحة لذا سيقسم العمل بينهما.

5- Do you think Polly was a good wife? Why/ Why not

هل تعتقد ان بولى زوجة جيدة

Yes, I do. Because she helped Jerry look after the horses.

نعم لانها كانت تساعد جيرى فى رعاية الخيول.



I- Match column A with column B:

A		B	
1-	Harry	a.	owned a taxi carriage and another horse called Captain
2-	Dolly	b.	went out with the taxi carriage in the afternoon.
3-	Black Beauty	c.	rode a horse to keep him healthy.
4-	Jerry	d.	rode Black Beauty around the park
		e.	suggested buying good food for Black Beauty for a few weeks,

B- Answer the following questions:

1-Who was Filcher?

2- Why did Mr Barry's doctor advise him to ride a horse?

3- Describe the horses that Black Beauty saw at the market.

4- Do you think Filcher deserved to be arrested? Why?

5- Why do you think Mr Barry believed what Filcher said about Black Beauty?

I- Match column A with column B:

A		B	
1-	Jerry	a.	said, "Let me get him some food and water."
2-	Polly	b.	was taken into a comfortable stable.
3-	Black Beauty	c.	was twelve years old.
4-	Mr Grant	d.	was Jerry's brother.
		e.	was eight years old.

B- Answer the following questions:

1-Why did Black Beauty stop finding it difficult to pull a taxi in London?

2-Who was Mr Grant?

3- What did Harry and Dolly do to help look after Black Beauty?

4- Why do you think Jerry bought Black Beauty although he had another horse?

5-Why do you think that Jerry took Captain to work on Black Beauty's first morning in London?

Part two

One day, a carriage arrived outside a park where we were waiting to take a family home. The horse that pulled the carriage looked very thin and very old. She had sad eyes, which looked at me carefully. "Black Beauty?" she said quietly, and then coughed. It was Ginger!

ذات يوم وصلت عربة خارج احد المنتزهات حيث كنا في انتظار توصيل اسرة الى منزلهم. كانت المهرة التي تجر الحنطور نحيفة و عجوزة جدا . كان يسكو عيناها الحزن و نظرت الى بامعان و قالت بهدوء " أأنت بلاك بيوتي؟" ثم سعلت لقد كانت جينجر .

Ginger looked so very diferent. She told me about her life since we lived at Earlshall Park. First, a wealthy man bought her, but she was not able to run very fast after her fall and she was soon sold again. She had many new owners, each one paying a little less money for her.

بدت جينجر مختلفة تماما . اخبرتني عن حياتها من ان غادرنا ايرشال بارك. في بادئ الامر اشتراها رجل ثري و لكنها لم تكن قادرة على الجري بسرعة كبيرة بعد سقوطها و سرعان ما بيعت مرة اخرى . كان لديها العديد من الملاك الجدد كل واحد يدفع فيها مالا اقل قليلا من الذى يسبقه.

"Then I was bought by a man who has many horses, and hires them to men who need them for taxi carriages," she continued. "But I'm not strong enough for this work. The men hit me hard when they want me to go faster. I work every day, without any break."
"You usually kick people who aren't good to you!" I reminded her.

و اكملت كلامها و قالت " ثم اشترانى رجل يملك العديد من الخيول و يؤجرهم لمن يحتاج الى حنطور اجرة لكنى لست قوية بما يكفي لهذا العمل فالرجال يضربوني بشدة عندما يريدوني ان اسرع انا اعمل كل يوم دون راحة". فذكرتها قائلا " انت كنت عادة تركلين الناس الذين لم يكونوا عطوفين معك!".؟

"I'm not strong enough to do that now," she said. "Men are always stronger than me. If they can get me to work longer hours for more money, they will. I know life is difcult for them, too. They always think about their families before they worry about their horses." At that moment, a man came up to her and began to drive her away. "Goodbye, Black Beauty," she said. "You've always been my best friend." I never saw poor Ginger again.

قالت " لست قوية بما يكفي للقيام بذلك الان. الرجال اقوى دائما مني و اذا كان بامكانهم اجبارى على العمل لساعات اطول للحصول على المزيد من المال لفعلوا ذلك . انا اعرف ان الحياة صعبة بالنسبة لهم ايضا، و يفكرون دائما باسرهم قبل ان يقلقوا بشان خيولهم" . في تلك اللحظة اقترب منها رجل و قادها بعيدا قالت لي " وداعا يا بلاك بيوتي لقد كنت دائما افضل صديق لي". لم ار جينجر المسكينة مرة اخرى.

I worked hard for Jerry all year. It was not easy work, but I enjoyed helping people. One day, we saw a poor woman in the street. She was carrying her small son. "Please, Sir, how do I get to the hospital? My son's ill and I do not know London."

عملت بجد لدى جيرى طوال العام لم يكن عملا سهلا و لكنى استمتعت بمساعدة الناس، و فى يوم من الايام ، راينا امرأة فقيرة فى الشارع و كانت تحمل ابنها الصغير و قالت" من فضلك ايها السيد كيف اصل الى المستشفى ؟ ابنى مريض و لا اعرف الاماكن بلندن".

"It is five kilometres," said Jerry. "You cannot carry your son that far. I'll take you. You don't have to pay me." The woman was very pleased, but before she could get into the taxi, two men jumped up in front of her."Take us to Regent Street!" called one of them.
"This woman is taking the taxi," said Jerry. "Our business is important. We were first in the taxi. She can wait."

قال جيرى " انها على بعد خمسة كيلومترات و لا يمكنك ان تحملى ابنك كل هذه المسافة البعيدة سوف اوصلك و ليس عليكى ان تدفعى لى مال". كانت السيدة مسرورة جدا و لكن قبل ان تتمكن من ركوب الحنطور ركب رجلان قبلها و قال احدهم " اوصلنا الى شارع رجينت!" فرد جيرى " هذه السيدة استاجرت الحنطور " . فردا عليه " عملنا مهم و نحن اول من ركب يمكنها الانتظار".

Jerry looked at the men and then said, "You can stay in the taxi as long as you want. I can wait while you rest yourselves." Then he turned to the poor woman and said, "Don't worry, they'll soon be gone."

نظر جيرى الى الرجال ثم قال " يمكنكما البقاء فى الحنطور كما تشاءون و انا سانتظر حتى تستريحا"، ثم استدار الى السيدة الفقيرة و قال" لا تقلقى انهما سوف يذهبان قريبا".

Jerry was right. Soon the men angrily got out of the taxi and walked of down the road. Jerry then helped the woman into the taxi. We left the woman and her son at the hospital and as we were leaving, a wealthy-looking woman called us over. "Jerry Barker! Is it you? I'm pleased to find you here because it's difficult to fnd a taxi in this part of London."

كان جيرى محق سرعان مانزل الرجلان و هما غاضبان و ساروا الى اسفل الطريق ثم ساعد جيرى المراة فى ركوب الحنطور . و تركنا السيدة و ابنها عند المستشفى و عندما كنا نغادر نادتنا سيدة عليها مظهر الثراء " جيرى باركر! اهذا انت؟ انا مسرورة لانى وجدتك هنا لانه من الصعب العثور على حنطور اجرة فى هذه المنطقة بلندن".

Questions and answers

1. Why did Ginger stop kicking people who weren't good to her ? لماذا توقفت جينجر عن ركل الناس الذين لم يكونوا جيدين معها؟
- Because she was not strong enough to kick anymore. لانها لم تعد قوية بما يكفى
2. How did Ginger look like when she met Beauty ? كيف كان مظهر جينجر عندما قابلت بيوتى؟
- She looked very thin and very old. كانت تبدو نحيفة و كبيرة السن جدا.
3. Who bought Ginger after the fall ? من اشترى جينجر بعد ان سقطت؟
- A wealthy man. رجل ثرى
4. Why did the wealthy man sell Ginger quickly ? لماذا باع الرجل الثرى جينجر بسرعة؟
- Because she wasn't able to run very fast after her fall, لانهالم تكن قادرة على الجرى بسرعة بعد سقوطها؟
5. What thing did Beauty remind Ginger of? ما الشئ الذى ذكر به بيوتى جينجر؟
-That she usually kicked people who weren't good to her. انها كانت دائما تركل الناس الذين لم يكونوا جيدين معها
6. Why wasn't Ginger able to kick people anymore ? لماذا لم تعد جينجر قادرة على ركل الناس؟
- Because she wasn't strong enough and their owners were always stronger than her. لانها لم تكن قوية بما يكفى و كان ملاكها دائما اقوى منها
7. Who was Ginger's last owner ? من كان اخر مالكا لجينجر؟
- He was a man who had many horses and hired them to taxi drivers. رجل لديه العديد من الخيول و يؤجرهم الى سائقى سيارات الاجرة
8. What did the drivers have to do to get more money for their families ? ماذا كان السائقين مضطرين لفعله ليحصلوا على مال اكثر لاسرهم؟
- They had to work longer hours for more money. كانوا يضطروا للعمل لساعات اطول للمزيد من المال.
9. How was the life of taxi drivers? كيف كانت حياة سائقى عربات الاجرة؟
- It was difficult; they always think about their families before they worry about their horses. كانت صعبة و كانوا دائما يفكرون فى عائلتهم قبل ان يقلقوا بشان خيولهم.
10.Did Ginger blame the drivers for being bad to her ? Why ? هل كانت جسنجر تلوم السائقين لكونهم سيئين معها؟
- No, because she knew that life was difficult for them, too. لا لانها كانت تعرف ان حياتهم صعبة
11. Where did the woman carrying a son want to get to ? اين كانت تريد السيدة التى تحمل طفلها الذهاب؟
- To the hospital. للمستشفى
12. Why did the woman ask Jerry about the way to the hospital ? لماذا سالت السيدة جيرى عن الطريق الى المستشفى؟
- Because she didn't know London. لانها لا تعرف لندن.
13. How far was the hospital ? كم كانت المسافة الى المستشفى؟
- Five kilometres far. خمسة كليومتر
14. What did Beauty enjoy doing although it wasn't easy work ? ماذا كان بيوتى يستمتع بفعله رغم صعوبته؟
- He enjoyed helping people. استمتع بمساعدة الناس
15. Why did the woman want to go to the hospital ? لماذا ارادت السيدة الذهاب للمستشفى؟
- Because her son was ill لان ابنها كان مريض
16. Why did Jerry offer his help to the woman لماذا عرض جيرى المساعدة على السيدة و ابنها؟

and her son ?

- Because she couldn't carry her son to that far hospital. لانها لم تكن تستطع حمل ابنها الى المستشفى البعيدة

17. What happened when the woman tried to get into the taxi ? ماذا حدث عندما حاولت السيدة ركوب العربة؟

-Two men Jumped up in front of her into the taxi. قام رجلان بالقفز امامها الى داخل العربة

18. What did Jerry do to get the two men out of his taxi ? ماذا فعل ليخرج الرجلان من سيارته الاجرة؟

- He told them that they could wait to rest - اخبرهم انهم يمكنهم الانتظار ليستريحوا

- He refused politely to drive the taxi. - رفض بادب ان يقود سيارة الاجرة

19. How were the two men when they got out of the taxi ? كيف كان الرجلان عندما نزلا من العربة؟

-They were angry. كانوا غاضبين

20. Where did Beauty and Jerry leave the woman and her son ? اين تركا بيوتى و جيرى السيدة و ابنها؟

- At the hospital. عند المستشفى

21. What happened while Jerry and Beauty were leaving the hospital ? ماذا حدث بينما كانا جيرى و بيوتى يغادران المستشفى؟

- A wealthy woman called them over. نادتهم امراءة ثرية

22. Why was the wealthy woman pleased to find Jerry in front of the hospital ? لماذا كانت السيدة الثرية سعيدة لوجود جيرى امام المستشفى؟

- Because it was difficult to find a taxi in that part of London. لانه كان من الصعب ان تجد سيارة اجرة فى هذا الجزء من لندن.

Critical thinking questions and answers

1- Why do you think Jerry didn't work seven days a week? لماذا تعتقد ان جيرى لم يعمل سبعة ايام فى الاسبوع؟

I think that he wanted his horses to get enough rest. لانه اراد ان يحصل لخيوله على قسط من الراحة

2-Why do you think that each of Ginger's owners paid less money for her? لماذا كان يدفع مالكى جينجر القليل من المال لشرائها

Because she was becoming weaker and weaker, so she could not work very well. لانها كانت تضعف اكثر و اكثر لذا لم تكن قادرة على العمل بشكل جيد

3- Why do you think Ginger looked weak and thin? لماذا بدت جينجر ضعيفة و نحيفة فى رأيك؟

Because she didn't take rest as she hod to work for seven days aweek. لانها لم تاخذ اى قسط من الراحة لانها كانت تعمل سبعة ايام اسبوعيا

4- Why do you think Black Beauty was healthier than Ginger although they did the same work? لماذا كان بيوتى يتمتع بصحة افضل من جينجر رغم انهم كانا يعملا نفس العمل؟

Because Jerry rested Black Beauty in the morning and he didn't work seven days a week. He also gave Black Beauty good food and fresh water but Ginger's owners didn't rest her and they hit her hard. لان جيرى كان يريح بيوتى و لم يكن يعمل سبعة ايام و كان يقدم له طعام جيد و مياهة عذبة لكن مالكى جينجر لم يتركوها تسترح و كانوا يضربوها بقوة

5- Do you think Black Beauty felt sorry for Ginger? Why/Why not? هل شعر بيوتى بالحزن على جينجر ؟

Yes, I do. Because he was sad when he saw her. نعم لانه كان حزين عندما راها.

6- Why do you think it was difficult to find a taxi in some parts of London? لماذا كان من الصعب العثور على حنطور اجرة فى بعض مناطق لندن؟

As the taxi drivers liked to work near the centre of the city where many people went.

لان السائقين كانوا يحبوا العمل بالقرب من مركز المدينة حيث ياتى كثير من الناس

7- Do you think that people were always happy to have Jerry as a taxi driver? Why / Why not?

هل تعتقد ان الناس كانت دائما سعيدة بان يوصلهم جيرى؟

No. He was probably not popular with everyone, because he did not always do what people asked him to do.

لا فهو لم يكن مشهور لانه لا يفعل ما يطلبه الناس.



I- Match column A with column B:

A		B	
1-	Jerry	a.	had many owners, each one paying a little less money for her
2-	Black Beauty	b.	took the poor woman to the hospital.
3-	Ginger	c.	worked hard for Jerry all year.
4-	The poor woman	d.	was strong and happy when Black Beauty saw her.
		e.	wanted to go to the hospital

B- Answer the following questions:

1-How do we know that Jerry cares about horses?
2-Why didn't Jerry go fast for the passengers who wonted to catch a train?
3- Why did Black Beauty feel safe with Jerry?
4-Why do you think Jerry didn't work seven days a week?
5- Why do you think that each of Ginger's owners paid less money for her?

I- Match column A with column B:

A		B	
1-	Ginger	a.	said, "You usually kick people who aren't good to you!"
2-	The two young men	b.	said," I must always think about my house."
3-	Black Beauty	c.	said their business wasn't important.
4-	Jerry	d.	was sold to a wealthy man after the fall.
		e.	came out of a hotel and called Jerry over.

B- Answer the following questions:

1-Why did Ginger stop kicking people who weren't good to her?
2- How do we know that Jerry was a kind man?
3-Why did the passengers ask Jerry to go quickly?
4- Why do you think Black Beauty was healthier than Ginger although they did the same work?
5-Why do you think it was difficult to find a taxi in some parts of London?

Chapter 6 My final home

problems	مشاكل	until	حتى	finally	في النهاية
apologise	يعتذر	change	يتغير	forever	للابد
worse	اسوء	recover	يتعافي	Any more	بعد الان
cottage	كوخ	Good news	اخبار جيدة	Bad news	اخبار سيئة
Weak	ضعيف	rest	راحة	luggage	امتعة
peer	يدقق النظر	suddenly	فجاة	treat	يعامل
vet	طبيب بيطرى	ill-looking	يبدو مريض	grandson	حفيد
large	كبير	delighted	مسرور	intelligent	ذكى
forehead	جبهة - جبين	Gosh	يا الهى	troubles	متاعب

Part one

Jerry knew the woman, Mrs Fowler, who was always very kind. When we arrived outside her house, she said to Jerry: "If ever you have any problems, tell me. I can always find work for a good driver, and I know you are one of the best." There were problems in Jerry's life.

كان جيرى يعرف السيدة فاولر و كانت سيدة عطوفة للغاية. عندما وصلنا خارج منزلها قالت لجيرى اذا واجهت اى مشاكل اخبرنى و انا يمكننى ان اوفر العمل للسائقين الماهرين و انا اعلم انك واحد من افضل السائقين. كان هناك مشاكل في حياة جيرى.

Winter came and soon there was a holiday for New Year. However, there was no holiday for the taxi drivers. We had a lot of work to do taking people from house to house. One evening, Jerry was asked to take home a rich man from a large house in the west of London. He was asked to wait outside the house until the man was ready. It was very cold and there was snow in the air. We waited for more than an hour before the man finally came outside. He did not apologise and was angry when he had to give Jerry money for the time he waited outside in the street. This man changed our lives forever.

اتى فصل الشتاء و سرعان ما اتت عطلة راس السنة. و مع ذلك لم يكن هناك عطلة لسائقى الحنطور كان لدينا الكثير من العمل بتوصيل الناس من المنزل الى اخر و في احدى الامسيات طلب من جيرى توصيل رجل ثرى الى منزله حيث سياخذه من منزل كبير في غرب لندن. و طلب من جيرى الانتظار خارج المنزل حتى يكون الرجل الثرى جاهزا و كان

الطقس باردا جدا و كان الجليد يتساقط. انتظرنا لاكثر من ساعة قبل ان يخرج الرجل فى النهاية. لم يعتذر و غضب عندما علم انه يجب ان يعطى جيرى مالا مقابل الوقت الذى انتظره جيرى فى الشارع. هذا الرجل غير حياتنا للابد .

When we finally arrived home that night, I was very cold and tired, but Jerry was worse. He coughed all the time. The next day, Harry came to feed me but I was not put in the carriage. The same happened for two more days. I knew Jerry was very ill.

عندما وصلنا اخيرا للمنزل فى تلك الليلة كنت اشعر بالرد و التعب الشديد و لكن جيرى كان اسوء منى حالا . كان يسعل طوال الوقت. و فى اليوم التالى ، جاء هارى لاطعامى و لكن لم اربط بالحنطور و حدث الشئ نفسه لمدة يومين اخرين . كنت اعرف ان جيرى مريض جدا .

Jerry slowly recovered, but the doctor told him not to drive taxis any more if he wanted to stay healthy. So Polly wrote to Mrs Fowler and asked if she had any work for Jerry. A few days later, Mrs Fowler wrote back. She wanted Jerry to work for her and said that the family could move to a small cottage near her house. This was very good news for the family, but bad news for me. I knew that they would sell me, and I was becoming old. Would I ever have such a happy home again?

تعافى جيرى ببطء و لكن الطبيب اخبره بعدم قيادة الحنطور ثانيا اذا اراد الحفاظ على صحته. لذا راسلت بولى السيدة فاولر و سالت عما اذا كان لديها اى عمل لجيرى. و بعد بضعة ايام كتبت السيدة فاولر ردا على رسالة بولى. ارادت السيدة فاولر ان يعمل جيرى لديها وقالت ان الاسرة يمكن ان تنتقل للعيش فى كوخ صغير بالقرب من منزلها . كان هذا الخبر السار للاسرة و لكن الخبر السئ كان يخصنى . كنت اعرف انهم سوف يبيعونى و كنت اتقدم فى العمر و تساءلت هل ساعيش فى مثل هذا البيت السعيد مرة اخرى؟

I was sold to another taxi driver called Skinner. I am sure that this was the same man who made Ginger so weak and sad. We worked seven days a week and I never had a good rest or enough to eat.

تم بيعى لسائق حنطور اجرة اخر يسمى سكينر . انا واثق من ان هذا هو نفس الرجل الذى جعل جينجر ضعيفة و حزينة للغاية. عملنا سبعة ايام فى الاسبوع و لم احصل على راحة مناسبة او طعام كافى .

Questions and answers

1. Who was the woman that called Jerry in front of the hospital? — من هى السيدة التى نادت جيرى امام المستشفى

- She was Mrs Fowler. — هى السيدة فاولر

2. Who was Mrs Fowler ? — من هى السيدة فاولر؟

- She was a wealthy kind woman, — سيدة ثرية و عطوفة

3. What did Mrs Fowler know about Jerry ? — ماذا كانت تعرف عن جيرى؟

- She knew that he was one of the best drivers in London. — تعرف انه واحد من افضل السائقين فى لندن

4. Was there a holiday for the taxi driver at the New Year in London ? — هل كان يوجد عطلات للسائقين فى راس السنة فى لندن

- No, there wasn't. لا لم يوجد

5. Why were holidays not always an easy time for taxi drivers ? لماذا لم تكن الاجازات وقتا سهلا لسائقى عربات الاجرة

- Because they had to do a lot of work taking people from house tohouse, لانهم كان يجب عليهم فعل الكثير من العمل باخذ الناس من منزل لاخر.

6. What did Mrs Fowler offer Jerry ? ماذا كان عرض السيدة فاولر لجيرى؟

- She offered to help him solve any problem that may face him. عرضت عليه المساعدة لحل اى مشكلة من الممكن ان تواجهه

7. Why did Jerry wait outside the rich man's house ? لماذا انتظر جيرى خارج منزل الرجل الثرى؟

- Because the rich man was getting ready to celebrate the New Year. لانه كان يستعد للاحتفال براس السنة الجديدة .

8. What was the weather like that evening on the New Year ? كيف كان الطقس فى ليلة راس السنة؟

- It was very cold and there was snow in the air. كان شديد البرودة و كان هناك ثلج فى الهواء

9. How long did Jerry and Beauty wait for the rich man ? كم المدة التى انتظرها جيرى و بيوتى للرجل الثرى؟

- They waited for more than an hour. اكثر من ساعة.

10. Did the rich man apologise for being late ? Why ? هل اعتذر الرجل الثرى عن تأخره؟و لماذا؟

- No, he didn't Because he thought it was Jerry's job to wait for him. لا لانهم اعتقد ان وظيفته ان ينتظره

11. Why did the rich man become angry ? لماذا اصبح الرجل الثرى غاضبا؟

- Because he had to give Jerry money for the time he waited him. لانه كان مضطر ان يعطى جيرى نقودا مقابل الوقت الذى انتظره

12. How was Black Beauty when he arrived home in the New year at night ? كيف كان بيوتى عندما وصل للمنزل فى ليلة راس السنة؟

- He was very cold and very tired. كان يشعر بالبرد و كان متعب جدا

13. How was Jerry at the end of the New year holiday? كيف كان جيرى فى نهاية عطلة راس السنة؟

- He was ill and coughed all the time. كان مريضا و يسعل طوال الوقت.

14.What happened to Jerry when he had to wait outside the house of the rich man ? ماذا حدث لجيرى عندما اضطر للانتظار خارج منزل الثرى؟

- He became ill as it was very cold اصبح مريضا لان الجو كان شديد البرودة.

15. What did the doctor advise Jerry not to do ? ماذا نصح الطبيب به جيرى ان يفعله؟

- Not to drive taxis anymore to stay healthy. الا يقود عربات الاجرة مطلقا ليظل بصحى جيدة.

16. How did Beauty know that Jerry was very ill ? كيف عرف بيوتى ان جيرى كان مريضا جدا؟

- When Harry fed him and he wasn't put in the carriage for a few days. عندما اطعمه هاري و لم يوضع فى العربة لمدة يومين

17. Why wasn't Black Beauty put into a carriage for two days ? لماذا لم يوضع بيوتى فى العربة لمدة يومين؟

- Because Jerry was too ill to take him out for work. لان جيرى كان مريضا جدا لدرجة لا تجعله يخرج للعمل

18. How did Jerry recovered ? كيف تعافى جيرى؟

- He recovered slowly, تعافى ببطء

19. Why did Polly write to Mrs Fowler ? لماذا كتبت بولى للسيدة فاولر؟

-To ask her if she had any work for Jerry. لتطلب منها ايجاد عمل لجيرى.

20. What did Mrs Fowler do when she received Jerry's wife's letter ? ماذا فعلت السيدة فاولر عندما استلمت خطاب زوجة جيرى؟

- She wrote back and asked Jerry to work for her. ردت و طلبت من جيرى ان يعمل لديها.

21. Where could Jerry and his family stay at Mrs Fowler ? اين تمكن جيرى و عائلته ان يقيم لدى السيدة فاولر؟

-They could move to a small cottage near Mrs Fowler's house.
تمكنوا ان ينتقلوا الى كوخ صغير بالقرب من منزل السيدة فاولر.

22. Why did Jerry sell Beauty?
لماذا باع جيرى بيوتى؟

- Because he had to leave to work for Mrs Fowler.
لانه كان مضطر ان يغادر ليعمل لدى فاولر

23. Who was the new owner for Beauty after Jerry sold him?
من هو المالك الجديد لبيوتى بعد ان باعه جيرى؟

-Skinner,
سكينر

24. Who was Skinner ?
من هو سكينر؟

- He was a taxi driver who made Ginger so weak and sad.
>سائق تاكسى الذى جعل جنجر ضعيفة و حزينة

Critical thinking questions and answers

1- Why do you think that Jerry became ill?
لماذا اصبح جيرى مريضا فى رأيك؟

- He had to wait outside the house of a rich man and it was very cold
لانه كان عليه ان ينتظر خارج منزل الرجل الثرى و كان الجو شديد البرودة

2- Why do you think the rich man did not apologise to Jerry when he had to wait for him in the cold?
لماذا لم يعتذر الرجل الثرى لجيرى عندما انتظره؟

The rich man probably thought that it was Jerry's job to wait for him. He did not think that this might be difficult for Jerry and Black Beauty.
لانه اعتقد ان الانتظار جزء من عمل جيرى و لم يكن يعتقد ان الانتظار سيكون مرهق

3-Do you think that the man should pay Jerry for the time he waited outside the house? Why /Why not?
هل كان يجب على الرجل الثرى ان يدفع لجيرى مقابل انتظاره خارج المنزل؟

Yes, he should pay him. If Jerry did not wait, he could take other passengers to places and get more money.
نعم كان يجب عليه لان جيرى كان من الممكن ان يقوم بتوصيل ركاب الى اماكن اخرى و يحصل على اموال اكثر.

4- Why do you think that Black Beauty was worried when Jerry found work with Mrs Fowler?
لماذا كان بيوتى يشعر بالقلق عندما وجد جيرى عمل عند السيدة فاولر؟

-Because he was becoming old and he knew that he might have more difficult work to do in the future.
لانه يتقدم فى العمر و كان يعلم انه ربما يعمل عمل شاق فى المستقبل.



1- Match column A with column B:

	A		B
1-	Mrs Fowler	a.	changed Jerry and Black Beauty's lives forever,
2-	Jerry	b.	Said that the family could move to a small cottage near her house
3-	The rich man	c.	was a bad driver
4-	Skinner	d.	was worse than Black Beauty and coughed all the time
		e.	said the family could move to a small flat

B- Answer the following questions:

1- Why did Jerry wait outside the house?

2- Why was the rich man angry?

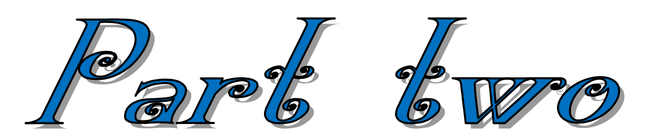
3- Who fed Black Beauty when Jerry was ill?
4- Why do you think the rich man did not apologise to Jerry when he had to wait for him in the cold?
5- Do you think that the man should pay Jerry for the time he waited outside the house? Why? / Why not?

I- Match column A with column B:

	A		B
1-	Polly	a.	fed Black Beauty when Jerry was ill.
2-	Skinner	b.	wrote to Mrs Fowler and asked if she had any work for Jerry
3-	Harry	c.	worked seven days a week and never had a good rest or enough to eat.
4-	Black Beauty	d.	wrote to Mr Barry.
		e.	was the new owner of Black Beauty and he was a taxi driver

B- Answer the following questions:

1- Why couldn't taxi drivers take a holiday?
2- How was the weather outside the house of the rich man?
3-Who was Skinner and why was he a bad owner?
4- Why do you think that Jerry became ill?
5- Why do you think that Black Beauty was worried when Jerry found work with Mrs Fowler?



One day, we waited outside a station for a train to arrive. A family of four asked Skinner to take them home with all their luggage. The daughter peered at me and said, "I don't think this poor horse can carry us and all our bags. He looks very weak."
"He'll be fine!" cried Skinner. "Don't worry about him."

وذات يوم انتظرنا خارج محطة لوصول احد القطارات. طلبت اسرة مكونة من اربعة اشخاص ان يوصلهم سكينر الى منزلهم بكل امتعتهم. حدقت في الابنة و قالت " لا اعتقد ان هذا الحصان المسكين يقدر ان يحملنا و جميع حقائبنا . انه يبدو ضعيفا جدا" . فصاح سكينر " سيكون على ما يرام لا تقلقي بشانه".

I tried to pull the carriage as fast as I could, but I was weak because I was given no breakfast. I wanted to go quickly but when we started to climb a hill, I knew that I did not have enough energy. I thought that I could not breathe and suddenly fell onto the ground. I could not move and I was sure that I was going to die.

حاولت جر الحنطور باسرع ما يمكن و لكن كنت ضعيفا لانني لم يقدم لي وجبة الافطار . اردت ان اذهب بسرعة و لكن عندما بدأت في صعود تل (مطلع) كنت اعرف انني لم يكن لدى ما يكفي من الطاقة و شعرت انني غير قادر على التنفس و سقطت فجأة على الارض . لم اتمكن من الحركة و كنت متأكد من انني ساموت.

After some time, someone gave me water and I slowly stood up. I was taken inside and given some food. A vet came to look at me and told Skinner that I needed good food and rest, but Skinner said that I was no good if I couldn't work. He decided to sell me. When I was well enough to travel, I was taken to a another market for horses outside London

بعد مرور بعض الوقت اعطانى احد الاشخاص ماء و تمكنت من الوقوف ببطء. اقتادونى للداخل و اعطونى بعض الطعام. جاء طبيب بيطرى لفحصى و قال لسكينر اننى فى حاجة للطعام الجيدو الراحة، و لكن سكينلا قال لا فائدة منى ان لم استطع العمل. قرر بيعى. عندما تعافيت بما يكفى للسفر اخذونى الى سوق اخر للخيول خارج لندن.

Once again I was with horses of all ages and sizes. This time I was put with the horses that were old or ill-looking. I did not think anyone would want to buy me now. The people who looked at me were also very poor and wanted to buy a horse for as little money as possible.

و للمرة الثانية وضعونى مع خيول من جميع الاعمار و الاحجام لكن هذه المرة وضعونى مع الخيول العجوزة و التى يبدو عليهاالمرض. لم اكن اعتقد ان اى شخص يريد شرائى حينها . و كان الناس الذين ينظرون لى فقراء للغاية و ارادوا شراء حصان باقل ثمن ممكن.

However, not all of the men were poor. An old farmer with a kind face and his grandson stopped to look at me. "This one looks kind and intelligent," said the boy. "Can we buy him?" "He's old," said the farmer. "I'm sure he used to be a good horse, but there's not much he can do now." "He's not as old as he looks," said the man who took me to the market. "He was used for driving taxis and became ill. With a little rest, he'll be a good horse again. "The farmer thought for a time, then decided to buy me. His grandson was delighted.

و مع ذلك لم يكن جميع الرجال فقراء. توقف مزراع عجوز يتمتع بوجه طيب و حفيده للنظر الى و قال الصبى " هذا الحصان يبدو و طيب و ذكى هل يمكننا شراؤه؟" و قال المزراع " انه عجوز" " انا متاكد انه حصان جيد و لكنه ليس لديه ما يمكنه القيام به الان".و قال الرجل الذى اخذنى الى السوق " انه ليس بالعمر الكبير الذى يبدو عليه، كان يستخدم لجر الحنطور الاجرة و اصبح مريضا لكن مع القليل من الراحة سيكون حصان جيد مرة اخرة" فكر الرجل المزالاع لفترة ثم قرر شرائى و كان حفيده مبتهجا .

My new owner was called Mr Toroughgood. He took me to a large field and I was given good food every day. The grandson, Willie, looked after me very well. When spring came, I felt strong again and they let me pull a small carriage. "I'm pleased we bought this one," said Mr Toroughgood. "He's a good horse and not old at all!"

كان مالكى الجديد يسمى السيد ثوروجود. اخذنى الى حقل كبير و كان يقدم لى طعاما جيدا كل يوم و كان ويلى حفيد السيد ثوروجود يحسن رعايتى و عندما حل الربيع شعرت بقوة مرة اخرى و سمحوا لى ان اجر عربة صغيرة. و قال السيد ثوروجود " انا سعيد اننا اشترينا هذا الحصان انه حصان جيد و ليس عجوز على الاطلاق".

The old farmer wanted to find me a place where I could work, and took me to the home of Miss Blomefield. She lived with her two sisters. "We need a new horse," she said, "but this one does not look very well. Look at his knees!" "He has had a difficult past, I'm sure," said the farmer. "But you won't find a better horse than this. Try him. If you don't like him, I'll take him back."

اراد المزارع العجوز ان يجد لى مكانا يمكن ان اعمل فيه و اخذنى الى منزل الانسة بلومفيلد و كانت تعيش مع شقيقتيها ، قالت الانسة بلومفيلد " نحن بحاجة الى حصان جيد و لكن هذا الحصان لا يبدو بصحة جيدة. انظر الى ركبتيه" . فقال المزارع " انا متاكد من انه مر بماضى صعب ، لكنك لن تجدى حصان افضل منه، اذا لم تحبيه سوف استعيده".

In the morning, a young man came to take me to their home. He looked at me. "He has a white foot and a white star on his forehead, like Black Beauty," he said. "Gosh, I think it is Black Beauty! Do you remember me? I'm Joe Green, the boy who made you ill!" I remembered the small boy, not this tall, strong man, but I knew it was Joe and I was happy to see him again.

فى الصباح جاء شاب لياخذنى الى منزهلم. نظر الشاب الى و قال " لديه قدم بيضاء و نجمة بيضاء على جبينه مثل بلاك بيوتى. يا الهى ! اعتقد انه بلاك بيوتى هل تذكرنى؟ انا جو جرين ، الصبى الذى تسبب بمرضك". تذكرت الصبى الصغير فلم يكن ذلك الرجل القوى طويل القامة و لكننى عرفت انه جو و كنت سعيدا لرؤيته مرة اخرى.

"I can see that not everyone has treated you well," he said. "But you're a good horse. We should keep you, that's for sure." Joe told the women that I was once Squire Gordon's favourite horse, and when they took me for a drive, I knew they were pleased with me. I have lived in this happy place for a year. Joe is now very good at looking after me. My work is easy and I feel strong and healthy again. So here my story ends. My troubles are over.

و قال جو " ارى انه ليس كل من امتلكك قد عاملك جيدا . لكنك حصان جيد يجب ان نحافظ عليك و هذا ما سافعله بالتاكيد " اخبر جو السيدات باننى كنت افضل حصان لدى سكوير جوردون، و عندما اخزونى فى جولة كنت اعرف انهم سعداء معى. لقد عشت فى هذا المكان السعيد لمدة عام . اصبح جو الان ماهرا فى العناية بى . عملى كانم سهل و اشعر بقوة و بحة جيدة مرة اخرى. حتى هنا انتهت قصتى و انتهت مشاكلى ايضا.

Questions and answers

1. Why did Skinner wait outside a station for a train to arrive ? لماذا انتظر سكينر خارج محطة حتى وصول القطار؟

- To take passengers from the station to their homes. لياخذ ركاب من المحطة لمنازلهم.

2. Why did the daughter think that Beauty couldn't carry them ? لماذا اعتقدت الابنة ان بيوتى لا يستطيع حملهم؟

Because Beauty look weak. لان بيوتى كان يبدو ضعيفا

3. What did Skinner tell the daughter ? ماذا اخبر سكينر الابنة؟

- He told her that not to worry about Black Beauty. الاتقلق بشان بيوتى.

4. Why was Black Beauty weak ? لماذا كان بيوتى ضعيفا

- Because Skinner didn't give him any breakfast. لان سكينر لم يعطه وجبة افطار

5. Why didn't Black Beauty have enough energy to pull Skinner's carriage? لماذا لم يكن لدى بيوتى طاقة كافية لجر عربة سكينر؟

- Because the carriage, the four passengers and their bags were too heavy. لان العربة و الاربعة ركاب و حقائبهم كانوا ثقلين جدا.

6. What happened when Black Beauty tried to pull the carriage up a hill? ماذا حدث عندما حاول بيوتى سحب العربة اعلى التل؟

- He couldn't breathe and fell onto the ground. لم يستطع التنفس و سقط على الارض.

7. How did Beauty feel when he fell onto the ground ? كيف شعر بيوتى عندما سقط على الارض؟

- He felt that he was going to die. شعر انه سيموت

8. Why did a vet look at Black Beauty ? لماذا نظر الطبيب البيطرى الى بيوتى؟

- Because Beauty felt down on the street and he saw that Black Beauty needed food and rest. لان بيوتى سقط فى الشارع و راى ان بيوتى يحتاج طعاما و راحة.

9. Why did Skinner decide to sell Beauty ? لماذا قرر سكينلا ان يبيع بيوتى؟

- Because he thought that Beauty was no good if he couldn't work. لانه اعتقد ان بيوتى كان ليس جيدا اذا لم يستطع العمل.

10. Where did Skinner take Beauty to be sold ? اين اخذ سكينر بيوتى لكى يباع؟

- To another market for horses outside London. لسوق اخر للخيول خارج لندن.

11. Why did Beauty think that nobody would buy him ? لماذا اعتقد بيوتى ان لا احد سيقوم بشرائه؟

- Because he was becoming old. لانه اصبح عجوزا

12. Who stopped to look at Black Beauty in the market outside London? من توقف لينظر الى بيوتى فى السوق ؟

- An old farmer and his grandson. فلاح عجوزو حفيده

13. What did Willie ask his grandfather to do ? ماذا طلب ويللى من جده؟

- To buy Black Beauty. ان يشترى بيوتى.

14. Why did Willie ask his grandfather to buy Beauty ? لماذا طلب ويللى من جده ان يشترة بيوتى؟

- Because he looked kind and intelligent. لانه بدا طيبا و جيدا.

15. What was the old farmer's opinion when he looked at Black Beauty ? ماذا كان رأى الفلاح عندما نظر الى بيوتى؟

- He thought that Black Beauty was old and couldn't do much. اعتقد انه عجوزا و لا يستطيع ان يعمل كثيرا

16. What did the man who took Beauty to the market say to make the old farmer buy Beauty ? ماذا قال الرجل الذى اخذ بيوتللسوق للمزارع كى يشترى بيوتى؟

- He told the old farmer that Beauty wasn't as old as he looked and with a little rest, he would be a good horse again. اخبره ان بيوتى لم يكن عجوزا كما يبدو عليه و مع قليل من الراحة سيكون حصانا جيدا

17. What did Mr Thoroughgood give Black Beauty every day ? ماذا اعطى ثروجود بيوتى كل يوم؟

- Good food. طعام جيد

18.Who looked after Black Beauty with Mr Thoroughgood ? من اعتنى ببيوتى مع السيد ثروجود؟

-Willie. ويللى

19. How did Beauty feel when spring came ? كيف كان بيوتى يشعر عندما جاء الربيع؟
- He felt strong again. شعر بالقوة مرة اخرى
20. How was Mr Thoroughgood when he took Beauty for a drive ? كيف كان ثروجود عندما امتطى بيوتى؟
- He was pleased to buy him and said that Beauty was not old at all. كان سعيدا انه اشتراه و قال ان بيوتى لم يكن عجوزا مطلقا.
21. Why did Mr Thoroughgood take Beauty to the home of Miss Blomefield لماذا اخذ ثروجود بيوتى الى السيدة بلومفيلد؟
- Because he wanted to find Beauty a place where he could work. لانه اراد ان يجد مكانا حيث يستطيع بيوتى ان يعمل.
22. Who did Miss Blomefield live with ? مع من كانت تعيش بلومفيلد؟
- She lived with her two sisters. مع اختيها
23. What did Miss Blomefield need ? ماذا كانت تحتاج؟
- She needed a new horse. كانت تحتاج حصان
24. Did Miss Blomefield like Beauty at first ? Why / Why not ? هل احبت بيوتى فى البداية؟
- No, because his knees were damaged. لا لان ركبتاه كانتا قد اتلفت.
25. Why did Joe Green know Beauty when he looked at him ? لماذ علاف جو جرين بيوتى عندما نظر اليه؟
- Because Beauty didn't change. He still had a white foot and a white star on his forehead. لانه لم يتغير و لديه قدم بيضاء و نجمة بيضاء على جبينه
26. Why didn't Beauty know Joe Green ? لماذ لم يعرف بيوتى جو جرين؟
- Because he became a tall, strong man. لانه اصبح رجلا طويلا و قويا.
27. What did Joe Green notice when he saw Black Beauty ? ماذا لاحظ جرين عندما رأى بيوتى؟
- He saw that most people had treated Beauty badly. ان معظم النس عاملوه بطريقة سيئة
28. What did Joe Green tell Miss Blomefield and her sisters about Beauty ? ماذا اخبر جرين بلومفيلد و اخواتها عن بيوتى؟
- He told them that Beauty was Squire Gordon's favourite horse. انه كان الحصان المفضل لسكوير جوردون.
29. How was Beauty's work at Miss Blomefield's home ? كيف كان عمل بيوتى فى منزل بلومفيلد؟
- It was easy. كان سهلا.
30. How many years did Black Beauty live at Blomefield's home ? كم عدد السنوات التى عاشها بيوتى فى منزل بلومفيلد؟
- For a year. لمدة عام.
31. How did Black Beauty feel at the end ? كيف شعر بيوتى فى النهاية؟
- He felt strong and healthy again. شعر بالقوة و الصحة مرة اخرى
- His troubles ended. مشاكله انتهت

Critical thinking questions and answers

1- Why do you think that Skinner makes Black Beauty work so hard? لماذا جعل سكينربيوتى يعمل بقوة؟
He was very poor and had to work hard to get enough money to five.He probably did not think that the health of his horse was important. لانه كان فقير و كان يجب ان يعمل بقوة ليحصل على اموال تكفيه للعيش لانه من المحتمل لم يعتقد ان صحة حصانه كانت

مهمة

2- At the station, do you think that Skinner knew that Black Beauty was too weak to carry the family and their bags? Why? /Why not?

هل كان يعلم سكينر ان يوتى كان ضعيفا لحمل اسرة و حقا\بهم فى المحطة؟

I think that he knew, although he told the girl that Black Beauty was OK. However, he needed to take the family to get more money.

اعتقد انه كان يعرف و بلارغم من ذلك اخبر الفتاة ان بيوتى كان بخيرو مع ذلك كان يريد توصيل الاسرة للحصول على المزيد من المال.

3- Why do you think that Skinner told the girt not to worry after she said that Black Beauty looked too weak to carry their bags?

لماذا اخبر سكينر الفتاة الا تقلق على بيوتى بعد ان قالت الفتاة ان بيوتى ضعيف على حمل الحقائب؟

I think Skinner told the girl not to worry because he didn't want to lose money- He had to work for seven days a week to get enough money, even when his horses were weak or ill.

لانه لا يريد ان يخسر المال فكان عليه ان يعمل سبعة ايام فى الاسبوع للحصول على ما يكفى من المال حتى و ان كان حصانه ضعيف او مريض.

4- Why do you think that Black Beauty was sold at the part of the market where the horses were old or ill-looking?

لماذا تم بيع بيوتى فى الجزء الخاص بالخيول العجوزة او المريضة؟

Because Black Beauty had been ill and now he looked old.

لانه كان مريضا و اصبح حينها يبدو عجوزا



I- Match column A with column B:

	A		B
1-	The daughter	a.	was Mr Thoroughgood's grandson
2-	Skinner	b.	said, "I don't think this poor horse can carry us and all our bags. He looks very weak."
3-	Black Beauty	c.	said that Black Beauty was no good if he couldn't work.
4-	Willie	d.	thought that he could not breathe and suddenly fell onto the ground
		e.	was Mr Thoroughgood's son.

B- Answer the following questions:

1-What happened when Black Beauty tried to pull the carriage up ahill?
2- Why couldn't taxi drivers take a holiday?
3- How was the weather outside the house of the rich man?
4-Why do you think that Jerry became ill?
5- Why do you think that Black Beauty was worried when Jerry found work with Mrs Fowler?

I- Match column A with column B:

A		B	
1-	Joe Green	a.	was put with the horses thot were old or ill-looking.
2-	Willle	b.	was pleased with buying Black Beauty and said that he wasn't old at all.
3-	Black Beauty	c.	said, "I can see that not everyone has treated you well."
4-	Mr Thoroughgood	d.	said, "This one looks kind and intelligent."
		e.	was Willie's brother

B- Answer the following questions:

1- Who was Skinner and why was he a bad owner?
2- Where did Black Beauty go after working with Mr Thoroughgood?
3- What did Joe tell the women about Black Beauty?
4- Why do you think that Skinner told the girl not to worry after she said that Black Beauty looked too weak to carry their bags?
5-Why do you think that Black Beauty was sold at the part of the market where the horses were old or ill-looking?



Mr. Mohamed El-Shaarawy